

250

ESSENTIAL CHINESE CHARACTERS

FOR EVERYDAY USE

by Philip Yungkin Lee

Vol 1

通用汉字

250 Essential Chinese Characters for Everyday Use: Volume 1 introduces the basic vocabulary and writing skills needed when learning Chinese. The second volume (ISBN 0-8048-3360-5) covers a further 250 essential characters. There are also two sets of flashcards, *Chinese in a Flash: Volume 1* (ISBN 0-8048-3361-3) and *Chinese in a Flash: Volume 2* (ISBN 0-8048-3362-1), which aid memorization and allow self-testing of character recognition.

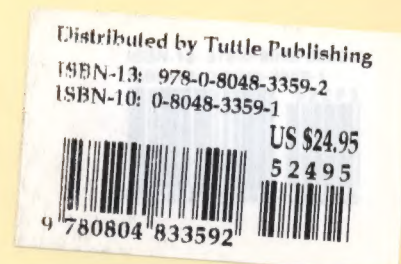
This book not only provides ample space for writing practice, but also gives the meaning of each character, its derivation, and its components—including the radical—and provides a range of compounds and sample sentences specifically designed to increase the user's active vocabulary.

In addition to the reference and practice material, there are 25 quizzes based on each set of 10 characters learned, and 5 more substantial review sections based on every 50 characters learned. An answer key to all of this material, including the five challenging Word Puzzles, is given at the back of the book. There are also alphabetical and radical indexes for quick reference to all the characters and compounds covered.

Philip Lee is an applied linguist with 30 years of practical experience in teaching Mandarin Chinese to foreign learners. He is currently a Senior Lecturer in the School of Modern Language Studies of the University of New South Wales, in Sydney, Australia.

TUTTLE PUBLISHING
Tokyo • Rutland, Vermont • Singapore

www.tuttlepublishing.com
Printed in Singapore



Published by Tuttle Publishing, an imprint of Periplus Editions (HK) Ltd.,
with editorial offices at 364 Innovation Drive, North Clarendon, VT 05759
and 130 Joo Seng Road #06-01, Singapore 368357

Copyright © 2003 by Philip Yungkin Lee

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or utilized in any form
or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or by any
information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher.

LCC Card No. 2004297990

ISBN-10: 0-8048-3359-1

ISBN-13: 978-0-8048-3359-2

Distributed by:

North America, Latin America & Europe

Tuttle Publishing

364 Innovation Drive

North Clarendon, VT 05759-9436

Tel: (802) 773 8930; Fax: (802) 773 6993

Email: info@tuttlepublishing.com

Website: www.tuttlepublishing.com

Japan

Tuttle Publishing

Yaekari Bldg., 3F, 5-4-12 Osaki, Shinagawa-ku

Tokyo 141-0032

Tel: (03) 5437 0171; Fax: (03) 5437 0755

Email: tuttle-sales@gol.com

Asia Pacific

Berkeley Books Pte. Ltd.

130 Joo Seng Road, #06-01, Singapore 368357

Tel: (65) 6280 1330; Fax: (65) 6280 6290

Email: inquiries@periplus.com.sg

Website: www.periplus.com

Indonesia

PT Java Books Indonesia

Kawasan Industri Pulogadung

Jl. Rawa Gelam IV No. 9,

Jakarta 14240, Indonesia

Tel: (62-21) 4682 1088; Fax: (62-21) 461 0207

Email: cs@javabooks.co.id

10 09 08 07 06

10 9 8 7 6 5

Printed in Singapore

TUTTLE PUBLISHING® is a registered trademark of Tuttle Publishing,
a division of Periplus Editions (HK) Ltd.

Contents

<i>Introduction</i>	v	Review 2	117
<i>Students' Guide</i>	vii	Word/Sentence Puzzle 2	118
Characters 1–10	1–10	Characters 101–110	120–29
Quiz 1	11	Quiz 11	130
Characters 11–20	12–21	Characters 111–120	131–40
Quiz 2	22	Quiz 12	141
Characters 21–30	23–32	Characters 121–130	142–51
Quiz 3	33	Quiz 13	152
Characters 31–40	34–43	Characters 131–140	153–62
Quiz 4	44	Quiz 14	163
Characters 41–50	45–54	Characters 141–150	164–73
Quiz 5	55	Quiz 15	174
Character Building 1	56	Character Building 3	175
Review 1	58	Review 3	177
Word/Sentence Puzzle 1	59	Word/Sentence Puzzle 3	178
Characters 51–60	60–69	Characters 151–160	180–89
Quiz 6	70	Quiz 16	190
Characters 61–70	71–80	Characters 161–170	191–200
Quiz 7	81	Quiz 17	201
Characters 71–80	82–91	Characters 171–180	202–11
Quiz 8	92	Quiz 18	212
Characters 81–90	93–102	Characters 181–190	213–22
Quiz 9	103	Quiz 19	223
Characters 91–100	104–13	Characters 191–200	224–33
Quiz 10	114	Quiz 20	234
Character Building 2	115	Character Building 4	235
		Review 4	237

Word/Sentence Puzzle 4	238	Characters 241–250	284–93
Characters 201–210	240–49	Quiz 25	294
Quiz 21	250	Character Building 5	295
Characters 211–220	251–60	Review 5	297
Quiz 22	261	Word/Sentence Puzzle 5	298
Characters 221–230	262–71		
Quiz 23	272	<i>Alphabetical Index</i>	300
Characters 231–240	273–82	<i>Radical Index</i>	316
Quiz 24	283	<i>Key</i>	320

Introduction

One of the questions most frequently asked by beginning learners of Chinese is how many characters are needed to gain a basic knowledge of the written language. There is no simple answer to this question. Excluding specific characters which are often found in shop signs, street names, restaurant menus etc., the number of characters a beginning learner needs to know ranges from 250 to 500. The lower figure is needed for the construction of simple sentences and the higher figure to construct more complex sentences and utilize them to express oneself meaningfully in everyday contexts.

The first volume of *250 Essential Chinese Characters for Everyday Use* introduces the basic skills involved in writing Chinese characters. Each unit presents ten new characters which are shown in simplified form (*jiantizi*) along with Pinyin romanization and their English meaning. Just over a third of the selection also have traditional forms (*fantizi*) which are listed side by side after the respective simplified forms. Short notes relating to the origin of the character, how the simplified form is constructed, and in some cases a guide to pronunciation all aim to de-mystify each character and make the task of learning them less arduous.

As well as the basic meaning of each character, several examples are given of its use in combination with other characters to form compounds, and each of these compounds is contextualized in an example sentence to illustrate its use. In these example sentences the characters are lined up with their Pinyin romanization to allow you to identify the words and pronounce them if you wish. Please note that the English translation is given as a general guide to meaning only.

The book is arranged in 25 units of 10 characters, each of which is followed by a quiz in both characters and Pinyin romanization so that you can monitor your own progress.

At the end of each group of 5 units or 50 characters, there is a Character Building section in which characters are grouped together based on their meaningful parts known as the radicals, showing how character components are recycled to form other characters; a Review of characters and compounds arranged according to parts of speech to help you build up your skills in sentence formation; and a Word/Sentence Puzzle utilizing all the characters so far introduced which challenges you to pick out characters in meaningful combinations. Don't hesitate to use the Key whose purpose is to guide you in your efforts to solve the puzzle.

If you need a quick reference on the whereabouts in this book of a particular character and its example compounds and sentences, consult either the Alphabetical Index or the Radical Index, which is based on the number of strokes of the radicals.

Your job as a self-paced learner is to focus intently on the character at hand as you write it. Each character should be written stroke by stroke, following the correct stroke order. Note the stroke order and the number of strokes as you practice writing each character in the boxes provided. There is a short note to remind what you should bear in mind as you write each character.

Unlike the letters of the roman alphabet, Chinese characters are all squarish in shape, with their components conforming to a rule of symmetry and balance. They should not be written too

rectangular or even roundish because that will destroy their visual integrity. In other words, you cannot practice writing the characters in just any shapes and sizes that you like, as you will need the visual images of your own handwriting to assist in recalling them. For this reason, this book provides you with a clear model for each character and a proper grid of squares in which to copy it over and over again until the habit is formed.

After you have practiced writing each character in its square grid, you will have learned to reproduce it yourself, corresponding very closely to the model character provided. To do this, you cannot rush each character since you must refer to the model character each time and follow the correct stroke order as you write it. When you do that, you will find that you get twice the result with half the effort.

Students' Guide

Chinese Characters

One of the great fascinations of learning Chinese lies in the Chinese writing system. Each character looks like a square-shaped box written in various strokes. Learners who are used to the alphabetical writing system find characters difficult to recognize, time consuming to write and near impossible to remember. In this book we teach 250 characters with a view to demonstrate how the large number of components you are learning both as visual and phonetical elements can be recycled and used in different combinations to form new characters. Through remembering the pronunciation or meaning of these components, you will gain a basic knowledge on the compositions of Chinese characters — the radicals, the phonetic components and their configurations. This will establish a relationship between form, pronunciation and meaning in characters and will enable you to transfer what you already know when you learn new characters.

Structurally there are two types of characters: those that exist as an integral unit, and those that can be divided into radical and phonetic components. Integral characters are often radicals themselves. Thus some basic knowledge of a radical is desirable not just for learning a certain character but for using the radical index when looking up a character in a Chinese dictionary.

It is often said that radicals are categories of thought which the ancient Chinese used to describe the world around them. A combination of a radical and a sound element gives specific meaning under a certain category of meaning. As you come across radicals in this book you will learn to classify characters under these categories or radicals. *The Chinese-English Dictionary* (published in 1995 by the Foreign Language Teaching and Research Press in Beijing) uses 189 radicals to organize the characters contained in the dictionary. That dictionary is probably the most widely used Chinese-English Dictionary in the world and is deemed likely to be the dictionary most often consulted by users of this book. You will learn 90 radicals in this book. Of these about 50 are the most common radicals. We believe that the knowledge you gained from these radicals will enable you to guess the meaning of many common Chinese characters.

The Basic Strokes

Chinese characters are written in various strokes. Although we can identify over 30 different strokes, only 8 are basic ones and all the others are their variants. Certain arrangements of strokes form components or the building blocks for characters.

The strokes that make up a component of a character and by extension the whole character are given names. Below are the 8 basic strokes:

[一] The *hēng* or 'horizontal' stroke is written from left to right.

[丨] The *shù* or 'vertical' stroke is written from top to bottom.

[丿] The *piě* or 'downward-left' stroke is written from top-right to bottom-left.

[㇏] The *nà* or 'downward-right' stroke is written from top-left to bottom-right.

- [丶] The *diǎn* or 'dot' stroke is written from top to bottom-right, finishing firmly. It can also be finished to bottom-left, depending on how the dot is written.
- [ㄣ] The *zhě* or 'turning' stroke can begin with a horizontal stroke with a downward turn, or it can be a vertical stroke with a horizontal turn to the right.
- [㇚] The *gōu* or 'hook' stroke is written by a quick flick of the pen or Chinese brush.
There are five types of *gōu* 'hook' strokes. They are:

[㇚] the *hěnggōu* or 'horizontal hook',

[㇚] the *shùgōu* or 'vertical hook',

[㇚] the *wān'gōu* or 'bending hook',

[㇚] the *xiěgōu* or 'slanting hook',

[㇚] the *pínggōu* or 'level hook',

- [㇚] The *tí* or 'upward stroke to the right' is written from bottom-left to top-right.

Stroke Order

It is important to remember that the components in a character are written according to some fixed rules or stroke order. The same stroke order should be used every time you write a character. If you write a character according to the prescribed order, you will find it easier to remember as repetition will develop muscular cues in your fingers which will assist in the recall of the character, much like remembering a figure in dancing. Thus, when writing a character, the following rules should be observed:

1. From top to bottom:

三		一	二	三	
学		讠	讠	兴	学
是		日	旦	旱	是

2. From left to right:

你		亻	亻	亻	你
好		女	好	好	
她		女	如	如	她

3. The horizontal before the vertical:

十		一	十		
七		一	七		
天		二	𠂇	天	

4. The horizontal before the down stroke to the left:

大		一	𠂇	大	
有		一	𠂇	有	有
在		一	𠂇	𠂇	在

5. The down stroke to the left before that to the right:

人		ノ	人		
八		ノ	八		
文		㇇	㇇	文	

6. The enclosing strokes first, then the enclosed and finally the sealing stroke:

四		丨	冂	冂	四
国		冂	囙	囙	国
回		冂	回	回	回

7. The middle stroke before those on both sides:

小		丿	小	小	
你		亻	你	你	你
水		丿	才	才	水

8. Inside stroke before side stroke:

这		讠	讠	文	这
过		寸	寸	讨	过
道		辶	辶	首	道

Explanatory Notes for Character Entries

Below is an annotated character entry. It has been reduced to show the full range of information:

2 — 19

1 — 请 qǐng please; invite

6 — The character combines *speech* 讠 and the phonetic 青 which can mean *perfection* to give the magic word 'please'.

7 — Radical: 讠 'word'

9 — Character components: 讠 + 青

Full form 請

Index # 9

Character configuration: 11

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 请 qǐng please
请安静。
Qǐng ānjìng.
Please be quiet.

2. 请 qǐng invite
今晚 我 请了 几个 朋友 回家 吃饭。
Jīnwǎn wǒ qǐng le jǐ ge péngyou huíjiā chīfàn.
I invited some friends to dinner tonight.

3. 请问 qǐngwèn excuse me
请问, 你 叫 什么 名字?
Qǐngwèn, nǐ jiào shénme míngzì?
May I ask your name?

4. 请进来 qǐng jìnlai please come in
不要 站 在 门口, 请 进来。
Bùyào zhàn zài ménkǒu, qǐng jìnlai.
Don't stand at the door, please come in.

5. 请教 qǐngjiào seek advice
我 可以 请 教 你 一个 问题 吗?
Wǒ kěyǐ qǐngjiào nǐ yí ge wèntí ma?
Can I get some advice from you?

12 — The second stroke is a horizontal-bend-tick.

10 strokes

13 — 14

15 — 20

KEY:

1. the character
2. character serial number as sequenced in this book
3. full form of the character
4. pronunciation and tone
5. character definition
6. character explanation and points to note on the use of the character.
7. radical information
8. radical index number (based on *The Chinese-English Dictionary 1995*)
9. character components
10. character configuration
11. character combinations and example sentences with pronunciation and meaning
12. points to note when writing out the character.
13. total number of strokes of the character
14. stroke order
15. space to practice writing out the character

Simplified characters versus full characters

Out of the 250 characters studied in this book, 83 are simplified. This is under one-third which is generally the number of characters simplified for common usage. Where a simplified form exists, the full form is given as a reference. It is useful to know how the full form looks like as it is often used to illustrate how the character came to evolve to its present form.

Simplified characters have existed long before the Communist Chinese Government sanctioned their use with an official list in 1986. For example, the characters *cōng* 从 (from), *wàn* 万 (ten thousand) and *bǐ* 笔 (writing brush) existed side by side with their full forms 從, 萬 and 筆 in classical Chinese. The official sanction only means the abolition of the complex forms.

Several techniques were employed to create simplified characters. One was to replace the original component of a character with a component of fewer strokes but which had the same sound as the given character. For example, the simplified character for 'recognize' is *rèn* 认. The component 人 is pronounced as *rén* which is also the pronunciation for *rěn* 忍 in the full form (despite their different tones). Other examples are *shí* 识, *yàng* 样, *zhōng* 钟, *kuài* 块, *bāng* 帮, *yuán* 园, *yuǎn* 远 and *jí* 极.

Another technique used was simply to take one section of a complex character and used it as the simplified one. Compare the full form for 'kin' 親 (*qīn*) and its simplified form 亲 which uses only the left component in simplification. Other examples in this collection are *ér* 兒 (son), *yī* 医 (doctor), *xī* 习 (practice), *tiáo* 条 (classifier), *lǐ* 裡 (inside) and *qì* 氣 (gas, vapor) with their respective simplified forms 儿, 医, 习, 条, 里 and 气.

Some characters are simplified on the basis of having adopted the cursive forms and in the process losing some of their strokes. For example, the radical 言 (speech) is simplified to 讠 by the adoption of its cursive form. Other radicals in this collection simplified on the same basis are 纟 (silk), 钅 (metal), 门 (door), 车 (vehicle) and 饣 (food). Note that simplification involving the radicals are responsible for many simplified forms being created as it is often the case that only the radicals are simplified. Examples are *shuō* 说, *huà* 话, *yǔ* 语, *shéi/shuí* 谁, *xiè* 谢, *qǐng* 请, *cí* 词, *dú* 读 for 讠 (word), *gěi* 给, *liàn* 练, *jīng* 经 for 纟 (silk), *qián* 钱, *tiě* 铁, *zhōng* 钟 for 钅 (metal), *wèn* 问, *jiān* 间 for 门 (door), *jiào* 较 for 车 (vehicle), and *fàn* 饭 for 饣 (food). Other cursive

characters adopted as simplified forms are *ài* 爱, *dōng* 东, *jiàn* 见, *huì* 会, *xiě* 写, *shū* 书, *lái* 来, *jué/jiào* 觉, *lè/yuè* 乐, *cháng/zhǎng* 长 and *chē* 车.

Some cursive forms use an arbitrary form created for the sake of writing a character quickly. These are used to replace some complicated phonetic components. One common stereotype is *yòu* 又 made up of only two strokes. It is used in the characters *huān* 欢, *hàn* 汉, and *duì* 对 replacing 歡, 漢, and 對 respectively. Another such stereotype is *yún* 云 made up of only four strokes. It is used in the characters *yún* 云, *yùn* 运, and *dòng* 动 replacing 雲, 運, and 動 respectively.

The Pinyin System of Romanization

The system used in this book to write Chinese with Roman letters is the *Hanyu Pinyin* system which is standard in mainland China and is the system now used almost everywhere else in the world. The imitated pronunciation should be read as if it were English, bearing in mind the following main points:

Consonants

b, d, f, g, h, k, l, m, n, p, s, t, w, y as in English

- c** like English **ts** in **its**
- j** like English **j** in **jeep**
- q** like English **ch** in **cheer**, with a strong puff of air
- r** like English **ur** in **leisure**, with the tongue rolled back
- x** like English **see** (whole word)
- z** like English **ds** in **kids**
- ch** like English **ch** in **church**, with the tongue rolled back and a strong puff of air
- sh** like English **sh** in **she**, with the tongue rolled back
- zh** like English **j**, with the tongue rolled back

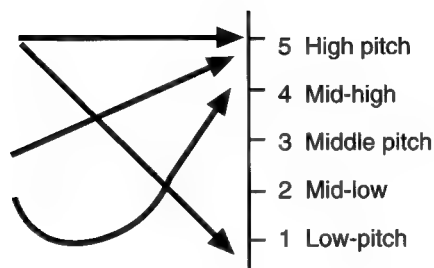
Vowels

- a** like English **ar** in **far**
- e** like English **ur** in **fur**
- i** like English **ee** in **fee**
- o** like English **or** in **for**
- u** like English **ue** in **sue**
- ü** like French **u**

Tones

A tone is a variation in pitch by which a syllable can be pronounced. In Chinese, a variation of pitch or tone changes the meaning of the word. There are four tones each marked by a diacritic. In addition there is a neutral tone which does not carry any tone marks. Below is a tone chart which describes tones using the 5-degree notation. It divides the range of pitches from lowest (1) to highest (5). Note that the neutral tone is not shown on the chart as it is affected by the tone that precedes it.

Tone chart



The first tone is a high-level tone represented by a level tone mark (—).

The second tone is a high-rising tone represented by a rising tone mark (ˊ).

The third tone is a low-dipping tone represented by a dish-like tone mark (ˇ).

The fourth tone is a high-falling tone represented by an falling tone mark (ˋ).

In addition to the above tones, there is a neutral tone which is pronounced light and soft in comparison to other tones. A neutral tone is not marked by any tone mark. A syllable is said to take on a neutral tone when it forms part of a word or is placed in various parts of a sentence.

How to use the Alphabetical Index

The words and phrases collected in the Chinese-English Glossary (approximately 1200 items) are arranged alphabetically according to the *Hanyu Pinyin* system of romanization. In this system each syllable (represented by a character) is a unit. The first character in a word or phrase is the head character. Each word or phrase is ordered in the first instance according to the phonetic value of this character. In a succession of entries having the same head character, alphabetical order is then determined by the phonetic value of the second character. This arrangement has the advantage of enhancing meaning by grouping together words which share a common character root, even though it is done at the expense of a straight alphabetical ordering.

The ordering of characters is affected by two other considerations. Firstly, in the case of characters represented by the same roman letters, alphabetization is determined by the tone of each character (represented in *Hanyu Pinyin* by diacritics), in the order first, second, third, fourth and neutral tone. Secondly, in the case of characters represented by the same Roman letters which also have the same tone, alphabetization follows the principle that simpler characters (those composed of fewer strokes) are listed before more complex characters (those composed of more strokes).

For example, the first 17 entries under Q have as their head character variations of the syllable 'qi' (pronounced like *chee* in English). These entries are *qī* — first tone (5 instances of a 2-stroke character, 1 of a 7-stroke character, 2 of a 12-stroke character); *qí* — second tone (1 instance); *qǐ* — third tone (4 instances of the same character); *qì* — fourth tone (1 instance of a 4-stroke character and 5 instances of a 7-stroke character). The neutral tone *qi*, written without any tone mark, is absent in this collection.

In the case of a character taking more than one tone, e.g. ‘*bu* 不’ which can take on *bū*, *bù* or *bu*, the words or phrases sharing the head character are also arranged in the descending order of the tones.

How to use the Radical Index

The radical index is based on the 189 radicals used by *The Chinese-English Dictionary 1995*, published by the Foreign Language Teaching and Research Press in Beijing. When you look up a character, first determine which part of the character constitutes the radical and then count the remaining number of strokes to locate the character under that radical. Where a character is made up of two components which can function as radicals, it is sometimes classified under both radicals. For example, the character *měi* 美 ‘beautiful’, is classified under both components which are treated as radicals: *yǎng* 羊 ‘sheep’ and *dà* 大 ‘big’ in the same way as found in the *Chinese-English Dictionary 1995*.

yī / yí / yì one

The character is pronounced in the 1st tone as yī when it is used in counting; in the 2nd tone as yí before a syllable in the 4th tone; and in 4th tone as yì before syllables in 1st, 2nd or 3rd tones.

Radical: 一 'horizontal stroke'

Index # 2

Character component: 一

Character configuration: ☐

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 一 yī one

一二三

yī èr sān

one two three

2. 一个 yí ge one (general objects, usually roundish)

请 给 我 一个 面包。

Qǐng gěi wǒ yí ge miànbāo.

Please give me a bread roll.

3. 一本(书) yī běn (shū) one (book)

我 买 了 一 本 书。

Wǒ mǎi le yī běn shū.

I bought a book.

4. 一次 yí cì once

我 来 过 北 京 一 次。

Wǒ lái guo Běijīng yí cì.

I've been to Beijing once.

5. 第一 dī yī first

这 是 第 一 次。

Zhè shì dī yī cì.

This is the first time.

Begin boldly and end firmly.

1 stroke

一



The character, represented by two horizontal lines, indicates the number *two*.

Radical: 二 'two'

Index # 10

Character components: 一 + 一

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>1. 二 èr two
一加一 等于 二
Yī jiā yī děngyú èr.
<i>One plus one equals two.</i></p> <p>2. 二哥 èrgē second older brother
我 二哥 是 中学 老师。
Wǒ èrgē shì zhōngxué lǎoshī.
<i>My second oldest brother is a high school teacher.</i></p> <p>3. 二月 Èryuè February
北京 二月 还 很 冷。
Běijīng Èryuè hái hěn lěng.
<i>Beijing is still quite cold in February.</i></p> | <p>4. 二等 èrděng second class
我 买了 二等 舱 的 票。
Wǒ mǎile èrděng cāng de piào.
<i>I've brought a second class cabin ticket.</i></p> <p>5. 独一无二 dūyī-wú'èr unique
她的 想法 独一无二。
Tāde xiǎngfǎ dūyī-wú'èr.
<i>Her way of thinking is unique.</i></p> |
|--|--|

The bottom stroke is longer.

2 strokes

一	二												



The character, represented by three horizontal lines, indicates the number *three*.

Radical: 一 ‘horizontal stroke’

Index # 2

Character components: 一 + 一 + 一

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 三 sān three
一不离二，二不离三。
Yī bù lí èr, èr bù lí sān.
Things don't happen once; they come in twos and threes.
2. 三角形 sānjiǎoxíng triangle
这是个三角形。
Zhè shì ge sānjiǎoxíng.
This is a triangle.
3. 三个月 sān ge yuè three months
我来了 中国 三个月。
Wǒ lái le Zhōngguó sān ge yuè.
I've been in China for three months.
4. 星期三 Xīngqīsān Wednesday
今天 是 星期三。
Jīntiān shì Xīngqīsān.
Today is Wednesday.
5. 三心二意 sānxīn-èryì undecisive
就 这样 吧，别 再 三心二意了。
Jiù zhèyàng ba, bié zài sānxīn-èryì le.
That settles it, don't be indecisive. (literally, three hearts, two minds)

The strokes are equally spaced, the middle stroke is the shortest.

3 strokes

一	=	三										

四

sī four

The character originally depicted breath coming out of a mouth. It was suggested that the meaning of *four* came from breath spreading out in the *four* directions.

Radical: 口 '4-sided frame'

Index # 51

Character components: 口 + 儿

Character configuration: 

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 四 sī four

二二得四

Èr èr dé sì.

Two times two equals four.

2. 四方 sīfāng square

我家有一个四方的盒子。

Wǒ jiā yǒu yí ge sīfāng de hézi.

I have a square box at home.

3. 四季 sìjì four seasons

这里的气候四季如春。

Zhèlǐ de qìhòu sìjì-rúchūn.

The climate here is like spring in all seasons.

4. 四川 Sīchuān Sichuan (province; literally, four rivers, referring to the four tributaries of the Yangzi which flow through the province).

四川菜很好吃。

Sīchuāncài hěn hǎochī.

Sichuan food is delicious.

5. 四通八达 sìtōng-bādá in all directions

美国的公路四通八达。

Měiguó de gōnglù sìtōng-bādá.

Highways of the United States go in all directions.

The inner strokes do not touch the frame.

5 strokes

1	𠃍	𠃍	𠃍	𠃍									

五

wǔ five

The character originally depicted the shape of a hand. The meaning of *five* comes from the *five* fingers.

Radical: 一 'horizontal stroke'

or 二 'two'

Character component: 五

Index # 2

Index # 10

Character configuration: 

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 五 wǔ five

五路 公共 汽车。

Wǔlù gōnggòng qìchē

No. 5 bus

2. 五月 Wǔyuè May

五月 一号 是 劳动节。

Wǔyuè-yīhào shì Láodòngjié.

The first of May is Labor Day.

3. 五个月 wǔ ge yuè five months

他的 汽车 买了 五个月。

Tāde qìchē mǎile wǔ ge yuè.

He bought his car five months ago.

4. 五体投地 wǔ tǐ tóu dī prostrate oneself

before someone (literally, the five extremities of the body).

他 为人 正直, 让 我 佩服得 五体

Tā wéirén zhèngzhí, ràng wǒ pèifúde wǔ tǐ

tóu dī.

I admire his uprightness greatly.

5. 五颜六色 wǔyán-liùsè multi-colored

五颜六色 的 云霞 真 美丽。

Wǔyán-liùsè de yúnxia zhēn měilì.

The multi-colored clouds are really pretty.

There is equal spacing between the 3 horizontal strokes.

The bottom stroke is longer than the ones above.

4 strokes

一	丅	𠄎	五										

六

liù six

The character is romanized as *liù* with the tone mark placed on the main vowel *u*. This is because the pronunciation of *i* is unaffected by the tone change.

Radical: 亠 ‘the top of 六’

Index # 6

Character components: 亠 + 八

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 六 liù six

二三得六。

Èr sān dé liù

Two times three equals six.

2. 六月 Liùyuè June

六月十二号是我的生日。

Liùyuè-shí'èrhào shì wǒde shēngrì.

The 12th of June is my birthday.

3. 星期六 Xīngqīliù Saturday

星期六我不上班。

Xīngqīliù wǒ bú shàngbān.

I don't go to work on Saturday.

4. 六一 Liù yī June 1st

六一是国际儿童节。

Liù yī shì Guójī èrtóngjié.

June 1st is International Children's Day.

5. 三头六臂 sāntóu-liùbì super-human

(literally, three heads and six arms)

你别怕，他没有三头六臂。

Nǐ bié pà, tā méiyǒu sāntóu-liùbì.

Don't be scared, he's not super-human.

End the last stroke firmly.

4 strokes

丶	亠	六	六										

七 qī seven

The character represented a bent finger under a fist, an ancient way of signalling *seven*.

Radical: 一 'horizontal stroke'

Character components: 一 + 乚

Index # 2

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 七 qī seven

七 七 四 十 九。

Qī qī sìshíjiǔ.

Seven times seven equals forty-nine.

2. 七天 qī tiān seven days

一 个 星 期 有 七 天。

Yī ge xīngqī yǒu qī tiān.

There are seven days a week.

3. 七月 Qīyuè July

北 京 七 月 很 热。

Běijīng Qīyuè hěn rè.

Beijing is very hot in July.

4. 七七八八 qīqībābā miscellaneous

这 里 七 七 八 八 的 事 情 很 多。

Zhèlǐ qīqībābā de shìqing hěnduō.

There are plenty of odd jobs to do here.

5. 七上八落 qīshàng-bāluò be agitated

(literally, like 15 buckets, 7 going up and 8 going down)

我 的 心 头 如 同 十 五 个 吊 桶

Wǒde xīntóu rútóng shíwǔ ge diàotǒng,

七 上 八 落， 静 不 下 来。

qīshàng-bāluò, jìngbuxiàlai.

My heart was racing erratically.

The second stroke ends with a hook.

2 strokes

一	七											



bā eight

The character signifies something that can *easily be divided into two*.

Radical: 八 'eight'

Index # 17

Character component: 八

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 八 bā eight

我 家 离 市 区 八 公 里。

Wǒ jiā lí shìqū bā gōnglǐ.

My house is 8 km from the city.

2. 八成 bāchéng 80 per cent

事 情 有 了 八 成 了。

Shìqíng yǒule bāchéng le.

It's as good as settled.

3. 八折 bāzhé 20% discount

八 折 优 惠 顾 客。

Bāzhé yōuhuì gùkè.

80% discount.

4. 胡说八道 húshuō-bādào nonsense

别 胡 说 八 道。

Bié húshuō-bādào.

Don't talk nonsense.

5. 乱七八糟 luànqībāzāo in great disorder

他 的 屋 子 乱 七 八 糟 的。

Tāde wūzi luànqībāzāo de.

His room is in a mess.

Leave a gap at the top.

2 strokes

ノ	八											

九

jiǔ nine

The character depicted a bent elbow, an ancient way of indicating the number *nine*.

Radical: 丿 ‘downward-left stroke’

Index # 4

Character component: 九

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

- 九 jiǔ nine
三 三 得 九。
Sān sān dé jiǔ.
Three times three equals nine.
- 九九表 jiǔjiǔbiǎo multiplication table
你的 九九表 背熟 了 吗?
Nǐde jiǔjiǔbiǎo bèishú le ma?
Did you learn the multiplication table?
- 九级风 jiǔjífēng force 9 wind
今天 吹 九级风。
Jīntiān chuī jiǔjífēng.
A strong gale is blowing today.
- 九宫格儿 jiǔgōnggér 9-grid paper
九宫格儿 是 用 来 写 汉字的。
Jiǔgōnggér shì yòng lái xiě Hànzì de.
A 9-grid squared paper is used for writing characters.
- 九一一 Jiǔyīyī September 11
美国人 难忘 九一一。
Měiguórén nánwàng Jiǔyīyī.
Americans will never forget what happened on September 11.

The second stroke ends with a hook.

2 strokes

丿	九												

十 shí ten

The character signifies *all directions*.

Radical: 十 'ten'

Character component: 十

Index # 11

Character configuration: 

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 十 shí ten

我 妹妹 今年 十 岁。

Wǒ mèimei jīnnián shí suì.

My younger sister is ten years old.

2. 十分 shífēn fully

你 康复了, 我 十分 高兴。

Nǐ kāngfùle, wǒ shífēn gāoxìng.

I'm very pleased that you've recovered.

3. 十足 shízú 100 per cent

这 个 小伙子 干劲 十足。

Zhè ge xiǎohuǒzi gānjīng shízú.

This young man is full of energy.

4. 十字路口 shízì lùkǒu intersection

前面 有 个 十字 路口。

Qiánmiàn yǒu ge shízì lùkǒu.

There's an intersection further ahead.

5. 十全十美 shíquán-shíměi be perfect in every way (literally, complete and beautiful)

人生 很 难 会 有 十全十美 的。

Rénshēng hěn nán huì yǒu shíquán-shíměi de.

It's very hard to find perfection in life.

The lower part of the vertical stroke is longer.

2 strokes

一	十												

Quiz 1 (1–10)

A. Join groups of 3 consecutive numbers in the 9-character grids below. They should be grouped together vertically, horizontally or diagonally.

一	九	七
二	三	六
三	四	五

七	二	三
五	六	四
七	六	五

八	七	六
四	九	五
八	九	十

B. Match characters with numbers by drawing lines.

(i)

十四	12
十二	15
十一	13
十五	11
十三	14

(ii)

五十九	65
三十七	48
二十六	59
四十八	37
六十五	26

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)

dī 一	third
dī 三	first
dī 一 cì	third time
dī 三 cì	first time
dī 五 cì	fifth time

(ii)

二 yuè	four directions
六 ge yuè	fully
四 fāng	20% discount
八 zhě	six months
十 zū	February

D. Fill in the missing numbers with characters.

(i)

1. seventh	dī 七
2. four seasons	_____ jì
3. 70%	_____ chěng
4. 100%	_____ zǔ
5. second class	_____ děng

(ii)

6. Thursday	xīngqī _____
7. 10% discount	_____ zhě
8. multiplication table	_____ biǎo
9. multi-colored	_____ yǎn _____ sè
10. undecided	_____ xīn _____ yì

叫

jiào be called

叫

The full form combines *mouth* 口 and the phonetic 斗 which can mean *struggle*. It may be that it's a struggle to *yell out* someone's name to catch his or her attention. The simplified form uses a similar phonetic 叫 which joins the two dots to the horizontal stroke.

Radical: 口 'mouth'

Index # 50

Character components: 口 + 叫

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 叫 jiào be called
她叫 什么 名字?
Tā jiào shénme míngzi?
What's her name?
2. 叫做 jiàozuō be called
这 种 汽油 叫做 含铅 汽油。
Zhè zhǒng qìyóu jiàozuò hánqiān qìyóu.
This type of petrol is called leaded petrol.
3. 叫门 jiāomén call at the door
有 人 在 叫门。
Yǒu rén zài jiāomén.
Someone is at the door.
4. 叫喊 jiāohǎn shout
请 别 在 这里 高 声 叫喊。
Qǐng bié zài zhèlǐ gāoshēng jiāohǎn.
Please don't shout here.
5. 叫座 jiàozuō draw a large audience
这 个 电 影 很 叫座。
Zhè ge diànyǐng hěn jiàozuò.
This movie is a box-office hit.

Write 口 half-way down the left strokes of 叫.

5 strokes

丨	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇									

什

shěn what?

甚

The simplified form must be used with the particle *me* 么 to give the meaning 'what?'.
 什么 shénme what?

Radical: 亻 'upright person'

Index # 19

Character components: 亻 + 十

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 什么 shénme what

你 叫 什 么 名 字?

Nǐ jiào shénme míngzì?

What's your given name?

2. 什么? shénme Pardon me?

什 么? 请 再 说 一 遍。

Shénme? Qǐng zài shuō yí biàn.

Pardon? Please say that again.

3. 什么的 shénmede etc

我 要 买 鱼、肉、鸡蛋、什么的。

Wǒ yào mǎi yú, ròu, jīdàn, shénmede.

I have to buy fish, meat, eggs etc.

The left and right components do not join up.

4 strokes

ノ	亻	仁	什									

么

me [particle]

麼

The character does not exist by itself but is used mostly after demonstrative pronouns and a few verbs.

Radical: 丿 ‘downward-left stroke’

or 厶 ‘private’

Character components: 丿 + 厶

Index # 4

Index # 56

Character configuration: ☐

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 这么 **zhème** so, such

这么 做 就 行 了。

Zhème zuò jiù xíng le.

It should be fine if you do it this way.

2. 那么 **nàme** in that way

别 走得 那么 快, 好不好?

Bié zǒude nàme kuài, hǎobuhǎo?

Don't walk so fast, okay?

3. 怎么 **zěnmě** how

这 个 词 儿 英 语 怎 么 说?

Zhè ge cí Yīngyǔ zěnmě shuō?

How do you say this word in English?

4. 多么 **duōme** to what extent

多么 新 鲜 的 水 果 啊!

Duōme xīnxiān de shuǐguǒ a!

What fresh fruits!

5. 要么 **yàome** either or

要 么 他 来, 要 么 我 去, 我 们 总 得

Yàome tā lái, yàome wǒ qù, wǒmen zǒng déi

见 个 面。

jiàn ge miàn.

Either he comes here or I go there; either way we've got to meet.

The first stroke only comes halfway down.

3 strokes

丿	么	么										

名

míng name

The character combines *mouth* 口 and *evening* 夕 which signifies that people at night identify themselves to others by calling out their *names*.

Radical: 口 'mouth'

or 夕 'sunset'

Character components: 夕 + 口

Index # 50

Index # 56

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 名 míng name

他 名 叫 王 刚。

Tā míng jiào Wáng Gāng.

His name is Wang Gang.

2. 名字 míngzì name

我 有 中 文 名 字。

Wǒ yǒu Zhōngwén míngzì.

I have a Chinese name.

3. 名牌 míngpái brand name

北 京 大 学 是 名 牌 大 学。

Běijīng Dàxué shì míngpái dàxué.

Peking University is a prestigious university.

4. 名片 míngpiàn business card

这 是 我 的 名 片。

Zhè shì wǒde míngpiàn.

This is my business card.

5. 名胜 míngshèng famous scenic spot

南 京 有 很 多 名 胜。

Nánjīng yǒu hěnduō míngshèng.

Nanjing has many famous scenic spots.

The third stroke does not cross through the second stroke.

6 strokes

丶	夕	夕	夕	名	名							

字

zì character

The character combines *roof* or *house* 宀 with *child* 子 which by inference means a child is studying *characters* inside a house.

Radical: 宀 'roof'

Index # 34

Character components: 宀 + 子

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>1. 字 zì character, word
你 这个 字 写得 不对。
Nǐ zhè ge zì xiěde búduì.
You wrote this character incorrectly.</p> <p>2. 字典 zìdiǎn dictionary
你 有 汉英 字典 吗?
Nǐ yǒu Hànyīng zìdiǎn ma?
Do you have a Chinese-English dictionary?</p> <p>3. 字母 zìmǔ alphabet
汉语 拼音 用 的是 拉丁 字母。
Hànyǔ Pīnyīn yòng de shì Lādīng zìmǔ.
Pinyin uses the Latin alphabet.</p> | <p>4. 字幕 zìmù subtitles, captions
这个 电影 有 中文 字幕。
Zhè ge diànyǐng yǒu Zhōngwén zìmù.
This movie has Chinese subtitles.</p> <p>5. 汉字 Hànzì characters
我 学了 十五 个 汉字。
Wǒ xuéle shíwǔ ge Hànzì.
I've learnt 15 Chinese characters.</p> |
|---|---|

The fifth stroke ends with a hook.

6 strokes

丶	㇀	宀	宀	字	字								

你

nǐ you

The right part of the character 尔 is the old form for *you*. The new form retains the same idea with the additional meaning of *person* 亻.

Radical: 亻 ‘upright person’

Index # 19

Character components: 亻 + 尔

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 你 nǐ you
你想买什么?
Nǐ xiǎng mǎi shénme?
What would you like to buy?
2. 你好 nǐ hǎo hello
你好! 认识你, 我很高兴。
Nǐ hǎo! Rènshi nǐ, wǒ hěn gāoxìng.
Hi! I'm pleased to meet you.
3. 你们 nǐmen you (plural)
我给你们介绍, 这是..., 这是...。
Wǒ gěi nǐmen jièshào, zhè shì ..., zhè shì....
Let me introduce, this is ..., this is ...
4. 你们好 nǐmen hǎo hello everyone
你们好!
Nǐmen hǎo!.
Hi! Everyone!
5. 你们的 nǐmen de your, yours
你们的東西放好了吗?
Nǐmen de dōngxi fānghǎo le ma?
Have you put away your things?

The fifth stroke is a vertical hook.

7 strokes

ノ	亻	亻	尔	你	你								

好

hǎo good

The character signifies the old idea that being in possession of *woman* 女 and *child* 子 is *good*.

Radical: 女 'female'

Index # 65

Character components: 女 + 子

Character configuration:

--	--

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 好 hǎo good

今天 天气 真 好。

Jīntiān tiānqì zhēn hǎo.

The weather is really lovely today.

2. 好办 hǎobàn easy to handle

这 件 事 好办。

Zhè jiàn shì hǎobàn.

This matter can be settled.

3. 好吃 hǎochī delicious

我 觉得 中餐 很 好吃。

Wǒ juéde Zhōngcān hěn hǎochī.

I think Chinese food is delicious.

4. 好处 hǎochù good points

学 拼音 对 学 汉字 有 好处。

Xué Pīnyīn duì xué Hànzì yǒu hǎochù.

Learning pinyin helps you learn Chinese characters.

5. 好看 hǎokān pretty

你 说 这 条 裙子 好 不 好看?

Nǐ shuō zhè tiáo qūnzi hǎo bu hǎokān?

Do you think this dress is pretty?

The first stroke travels down, turns and ends firmly.

6 strokes

㇀	㇁	女	如	好	好							

我

wǒ I, me

The character combines *grain* 手 (written as 禾 in early sources) and *spear* 戈 to satisfy basic needs of food and security. From this the idea of *self* emerges.

Radical: 戈 'spear'

Index # 85

Character components: 手 + 戈

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 我 wǒ I, me

我 喜欢 学 汉字。

Wǒ xǐhuan xué Hànzì.

I like learning Chinese characters.

2. 我们 wǒmen we, us

我们 互相 帮助, 好 不好?

Wǒmen hùxiāng bāngzhù, hǎo buhǎo?

Let's help each other, shall we?

3. 我们的 wǒmende our, ours

我们的 将来 是 美好 的。

Wǒmende jiānglái shì měihǎo de.

Our future is bright.

4. 自我 zìwǒ self

我 建议 大家自我 介绍 一下儿。

Wǒ jiànyì dàjiā zìwǒ jièshào yíxià.

I suggest that we introduce ourselves.

The fourth stroke comes up, the sixth stroke sweeps down.

7 strokes

一	二	予	手	我	我	我						

请

qǐng please; invite

請

The character combines *speech* 讠 and the phonetic 青 which can mean *perfection* to give the magic word 'please'.

Radical: 讠 'word'

Index # 9

Character components: 讠 + 青

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 请 qǐng please

请 安静。

Qǐng ānjìng.

Please be quiet.

2. 请 qǐng invite

今晚 我 请了几个 朋友 回家 吃饭。

Jīnwǎn wǒ qǐng le jǐ ge péngyou huíjiā chīfàn.

I invited some friends to dinner tonight.

3. 请问 qǐngwèn excuse me

请问，你叫 什么 名字？

Qǐngwèn, nǐ jiào shénme míngzi?

May I ask your name?

4. 请进来 qǐng jìnlai please come in

不要 站 在 门口，请 进来。

Búyào zhàn zài ménkǒu, qǐng jìnlai.

Don't stand at the door, please come in.

5. 请教 qǐngjiào seek advice

我 可以 请教你 一个 问题 吗？

Wǒ kěyǐ qǐngjiào nǐ yí ge wèntí ma?

Can I get some advice from you?

The second stroke is a horizontal-bend-tick.

10 strokes

丶	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠	请	请	请			

问

wèn ask

問

The character signifies that one has to use the *mouth* 口 to ask a *question* and this usually takes place outside one's *door* 门.

Radical: 门 'door'

Index # 37

Character components: 门 + 口

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 问 wèn ask
不懂就问。
Bù dǒng jiù wèn.
Ask when you don't understand.
2. 问答 wèndá questions and answers
我现在做问答练习。
Wǒ xiànzài zuò wèndá liànxí.
I'm doing questions and answers drills at present.
3. 问题 wèntí question
没有问题。
Méiyǒu wèntí.
There are no problems.
4. 问好 wènǎo say hello to
请代我向父亲问好。
Qǐng dài wǒ xiàng nǐ fùqin wènǎo.
Please give my regards to your father.
5. 学问 xuéwèn learning
他是一位学问高深的人。
Tā shì yī wèi xuéwèn gāoshēn de rén.
He is a very learned person.

The first stroke is a downward dot.

6 strokes

丶	讠	门	问	问	问							

Quiz 2 (11–20)

A. Look at the 9-character grid and **CIRCLE** words or phrases. They can be written horizontally from left to right or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. **COPY** the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

Word or phrase			Pinyin	Translation
<div> <div>你</div> <div>好</div> <div>什</div> </div> <div> <div>请</div> <div>叫</div> <div>么</div> </div> <div> <div>问</div> <div>名</div> <div>字</div> </div>	(i)	<div> <div>你</div> <div>好</div> <div></div> </div>	Nǐ hǎo!	Hello!
	(ii)	<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> </div>		
	(iii)	<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> </div>		
	(iv)	<div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> </div>		

B. Refer to the characters in the 9-character grid above and **CONVERT** the pinyin phrases into characters. You may like to check their English meaning in the Key. You might also need to refresh your memory on how to write the character wǒ ‘I, me’.

(i)	Wǒ wèn nǐ.									
(ii)	Nǐ wèn wǒ shénme?									
(iii)	Wǒ jiào shénme míngzi?									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)			(ii)	
好 kàn		Come in	xué 问	question
好 chī		characters	问 tí	etc.
Hàn 字		dictionary	叫 hǎn	say hello to
yǒu 名		delicious	问 hǎo	what
字 diǎn		alphabet	请 jiào	shout
请 jìnlai		business card	什么	seek advice
字 mǔ		pretty	什么 de	how
名 piān		famous	zěn 么	learning

您

nín you (polite)

The character combines *you* 你 with *heart* 心 to express the *polite form* of 'you'.

Radical: 心 'heart'

Index # 76

Character components: 你 + 心

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 您 nín you (polite)

您 贵姓?

Nín guìxìng?

May I ask your name (surname)?

2. 您好 Nín hǎo! How are you!

老师, 您好!

Lǎoshī, nín hǎo!

How are you, sir/ma'am (teacher)?

3. 您早 Nín zǎo! Good morning!

老师, 您早!

Lǎoshī, nín zǎo!

Good morning, sir/ma'am (teacher)!

Note the position of the three dots in 心 .

11 strokes

ノ	イ	ㄣ	ㄣ	你	你	你	你	您	您	您		

贵

guì expensive

Full form

貴

When used as an honorific, the character means *your*. By itself, it means *expensive*. This comes from the time when shells were used as a form of money.

Radical: 贝 'seashell'

Index # 92

Character components: 中 + 一 + 贝

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 贵 guì expensive

这本书很好, 也不贵。

Zhè běn shū hěn hǎo, yě bù guì.

This book is good and is not expensive.

2. 贵姓 guìxìng your name (honorific)

您 贵姓?

Nín guìxìng?

What's your surname, please?

3. 贵国 guìguó your country (honorific)

贵国 是哪国?

Guìguó shì nǎguó?

What nationality (polite form) are you?

The last stroke finishes firmly.

9 strokes

丶	冂	口	中	虫	串	𧈧	𧈨	贵	贵				

姓

xìng surname

The character combines *woman* 女 and *birth* 生 to give the idea of *surname* inherited from the mother, which was the case in matriarchical societies.

Radical: 女 'female'

Index # 65

Character components: 女 + 生

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 姓 xìng to be surnamed
我 姓 李, 名 叫 恩 华。
Wǒ xìng Lǐ, míng jiào Ēnhuá.
My surname is Li, my given name is Enhua.
2. 姓名 xìngmíng full name
请 写 下 你 的 姓 名。
Qǐng xiěxià nǐde xìngmíng.
Please write down your full name.
3. 姓氏 xìngshì surname
以 姓 氏 笔 划 为 序。
Yǐ xìngshì bǐhuà wéi xù.
Arranged by surname in the order of the number of strokes.
4. 老百姓 lǎobǎixìng common people
(literally, the 100 old names)
中 国 一 般 老 百 姓 很 穷。
Zhōngguó yìbān lǎobǎixìng hěn qióng.
In general, people in China are poor.
5. 同姓 tóngxìng having the same surname
以 前 中 国 人 同 姓 不 通 婚。
Yǐqián Zhōngguó rén tóngxìng bù tōnghūn.
In the past, people would not marry someone with the same surname.

The bottom horizontal stroke on the right-hand side is longer.

8 strokes

ㄥ	ㄣ	女	如	如	如	姓	姓					

是

shì be

Swearing under the *sun* 日 that something is true signifies the idea of certainty. Thus the character means *to be*.

Radical: 日 'sun'

Index # 90

Character components: 日 + 疋

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>1. 是 shì to be
她是日本人。
Tā shì Rìběnrén.
<i>She is Japanese.</i></p> <p>2. 是的 shìde yes
是的，日本人也用汉字。
Shìde, Rìběnrén yě yòng Hànzì.
<i>Yes, Japanese people also use Chinese characters.</i></p> <p>3. 不是 búshì not to be
他不是日本人。
Tā búshì Rìběnrén.
<i>He's not Japanese.</i></p> | <p>4. 是不是 shìbúshì to be or not to be
他是不是日本人？
Tā shìbúshì Rìběnrén?
<i>Is he Japanese?</i></p> <p>5. 还是 hái shì or
她是日本人，还是韩国人？
Tā shì Rìběnrén, hái shì Hánguó rén?
<i>Is she Japanese or Korean?</i></p> |
|---|---|

Make sure that the last stroke is not too flat.

9 strokes

丶	冂	日	日	旦	早	旱	晃	是				

哪

nǎ which

The character combines *mouth* 口 with the phonetic 那 gives the character the sound element. By itself, it means *which*; with 儿, it means *where*.

Radical: 口 ‘mouth’

Index # 50

Character components: 口 + 𠂔 + 𠂔

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>1. 哪 nǎ which one?
你 喜欢 哪个 玩具?
Nǐ xǐhuan nǎ ge wánjù?
Which toy would you like?</p> | <p>4. 哪些 nǎxiē which ones?
你 去过 北京 哪些 地方?
Nǐ qùguo Běijīng nǎxiē dìfang?
Where have you been to in Beijing?</p> |
| <p>2. 哪儿 nǎr where?
你 上 哪儿 去?
Nǐ shàng nǎr qù?
Where are you going?</p> | <p>5. 哪国人 nǎguórén which country?
你 是 哪国人?
Nǐ shì nǎguórén?
What nationality are you?</p> |
| <p>3. 哪里 nǎli where?
你 上 哪里 去?
Nǐ shàng nǎli qù?
Where are you going?</p> | |

The eighth stroke is written like the figure 3.

9 strokes

丨	𠂔	𠂔	叮	叮	𠂔	𠂔	哪	哪				



rén person, people

The character is a pictograph of a *person* standing with his/her feet apart.

Radical: 人 'person'

Index # 18

Character component: 人

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 人 rén person, people
房间里没有人。
Fǎnjiān lǐ méiyǒu rén.
There is no one in the room.
2. 人们 rénmen people
人们都说她不错。
Rénmen dōu shuō tā búcuò.
People all speak well of her.
3. 中国人 Zhōngguó rén Chinese (person)
中国人跟日本人不一样。
Zhōngguó rén gēn Rìběn rén bù yíyàng.
Chinese people are different from Japanese.
4. 人口 rénkǒu population
中国的人口众多。
Zhōngguó de rénkǒu zhòngduō.
China has a large population.
5. 人山人海 rénshān-rénhǎi sea of people
(literally, a mountain of people, a sea of people)
广场上人山人海。
Guǎngchǎng shàng rénshān-rénhǎi.
The square was crowded with many people.

Note the difference between 人 and 入.

2 strokes

ノ	人											

中

zhōng middle

The character signifies the idea of an arrow hitting the bull’s eye right in the *center*.

Radical: | ‘vertical stroke’

Index # 3

Character components: 口 + |

Character configuration: 

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 中 zhōng middle

我 穿 中 号 的。

Wǒ chuān zhōng hào de.

I wear medium size.
2. 中级 zhōngjī intermediate level

这 是 中 级 课 程。

Zhè shì zhōngjī kèchéng.

This is an intermediate course.
3. 中国 Zhōngguó China

中 国 是 世 界 第 三 大 国。

Zhōngguó shì shìjiè dìsān dàguó.

China is the world’s third largest country.
4. 中文 Zhōngwén Chinese language

我 看 不 懂 中 文 报。

Wǒ kànbudǒng Zhōngwén bào.

I can’t read Chinese newspapers.
5. 中餐 Zhōngcān Chinese food

我 爸 爸 喜 欢 吃 中 餐。

Wǒ bàba xǐhuan chī Zhōngcān.

My father loves Chinese food.

The vertical stroke is in the middle of the rectangle.

4 strokes

丨	凵	口	中										

美

měi beautiful

The character combines *lamb* 羊 and *big* 大 to give the idea of *perfection* or *beauty*.

Radical: 羊 'sheep'

or 大 'big'

Character components: 羊 + 大

Index # 133

Index # 43

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 美 měi good, satisfactory
这里的 东西 物美 价廉。
Zhèlǐ de dōngxi wùměi-jíalián.
The things here are good and inexpensive.
2. 美丽 měilì beautiful
这里的 风景 很 美丽。
Zhèlǐ de fēngjǐng hěn měilì.
The scenery here is beautiful.
3. 美好 měihǎo fine, happy
我的 童年 是 一个 美好 的 回忆。
Wǒde tóngnián shì yí ge měihǎo de huíyì.
I have good memories of my childhood.
4. 美化 měihuà beautify
我们 应该 尽 可能 美化 环境。
Wǒmen yīnggāi jìn kěnéng měihuà huánjìng.
We should try our best to beautify the environment.
5. 美国 Měiguó USA
美国 在 北 美洲。
Měiguó zài Běi Měizhōu.
The United States is in North America.

The last two strokes taper off.

9 strokes

丶	㇏	㇏	㇏	羊	𦍋	𦍋	美	美				

吗

ma [particle]

嗎

The character combines *mouth* 口 which signifies *asking*, while the phonetic 马 gives the sound *ma*. Note that 吗 is always pronounced in the neutral tone.

Radical: 口 'mouth'

Index # 50

Character components: 口 + 马

Character configuration:

--	--

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 吗 ma question particle

你找我吗?

Nǐ zhǎo wǒ ma?

Are you looking for me?

2. 好吗 hǎo ma good?

你好吗?

Nǐ hǎo ma?

How are you?

3. 忙吗 máng ma busy?

你忙吗?

Nǐ máng ma?

Are you busy?

4. 干嘛 gàn ma what are you doing?

你晚上干嘛?

Nǐ wǎnshàng gàn ma?

What will you be doing in the evening?

马 should be upright.

6 strokes

1	𠂇	口	𠂇	吗	吗								

Quiz 3 (21–30)

A. Look at the 9-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally from left to right or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

Word or phrase			Pinyin	Translation			
您	哪	贵	(i)	贵	姓	Guìxìng	What's your name?
中	国	姓	(ii)				
是	人	美	(iii)				

B. Refer to the characters in the 9-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin sentences into characters. You might like to check their English meaning in the Key. Look up the characters you have learnt in previous sets.

(i)	Qǐngwèn, nín guìxìng?									
(ii)	Qǐngwèn, guìguó shì nǎguó?									
(iii)	Qǐngwèn, nǐ shì nǎguórén?									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)

哪 ge	fine, happy
国 qīng	which one
哪 xiē	beautiful
美 lì	country
美好	which ones
国 jiā	National Day

(ii)

中 wén	population
是 de	Chinese food
hái 是	name
人 kǒu	Chinese language
姓名	or
中 cān	yes

他 tā he

The character combines *person* 亻 and *also* 也 to suggest the idea of 'that male person also.' Thus it means *the third person*.

Radical: 亻 'upright person'

Index # 19

Character components: 亻 + 也

Character configuration:

--	--

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 他 tā he

他是我的老朋友。

Tā shì wǒde lǎopéngyou.

He's an old friend of mine.

2. 他们 tāmen they

他们是法国人，不是美国人。

Tāmen shì Fǎguórén, búshì Měiguórén.

They're French, not American.

3. 他人 tāren others

别吵，这样会影响他人。

Bié chǎo, zhèyàng huì yǐngxiǎng tāren.

Don't make so much noise as this will disturb people.

4. 他妈的 tā māde damn it!

他妈的，你怎么走路看也不看!

Tā māde, nǐ zěnmē zǒulù kàn yě búkàn!

Damn you, why don't you watch where you're going!

5. 其他 qítā other

还有什么其他事情要我们做

Háiyǒu shěnmē qítā shìqíng yào wǒmen zuò

吗?

ma?

Is there anything else you want us to do?

The third stroke ends with a hook.

5 strokes

ノ	亻	仈	仉	他									

她

tā she

The character is a modern version of the pronoun 他 *he*, using the idea of *female* 女 and *also* 也 to suggest the idea of ‘that female person also.’ Thus it means *she*.

Radical: 女 ‘female’

Index # 65

Character components: 女 + 也

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 她 tā she

她说汉语 说得 很好。

Tā shuō Hànyǔ shuōde hěn hǎo.

She speaks Chinese very well.

2. 她的 tāde her, hers

她的汉语 说得 很地道。

Tāde Hànyǔ shuōde hěn dīdao.

Her spoken Mandarin is very idiomatic.

3. 她们 tāmen they, them (female)

你认得 她们 是 谁 吗?

Nǐ rènde tāmen shì shéi/shuí ma?

Do you know who these girls/women are?

4. 她们的 tāmen de their, theirs (female)

她们的衣服 都 很 时髦。

Tāmen de yīfu dōu hěn shímáo.

The clothes they are wearing are very fashionable.

The fourth stroke ends with a hook.

6 strokes

㇀	㇁	女	如	她								

谁

shuí/shéi who

誰

The full character expresses the idea of asking for the identity of a *person*, or *who*, with the combination of the idea of *speech* 言 and the phonetic 隹, which contains *person*.

Radical: 讠 'word'

Index #9

Character components: 讠 + 隹

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 谁 shuí/shéi who

有 谁 能 帮助 我就 好了!

Yǒu shuí/shéi néng bāngzhù wǒ jiù hǎo le!

If only someone could help me!

2. 谁的 shuí/shéi'de whose

这 是 谁 的 中 文 课 本?

Zhè shì shuí/shéi'de Zhōngwén kèběn?

Whose Chinese textbook is this?

3. 谁知道 shuí/shéi zhīdao no one knows

我 本 是 跟 她 开 玩笑, 谁 知 道 她

Wǒ běn shì gēn tā kāi wánxiào, shéi zhīdao tā

生 气 了。

shēngqì le.

I was only joking with her, I didn't expect her to get angry.

There is equal spacing between the horizontal lines.

10 strokes

丶	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠			

的

de [particle]

Pronounced in the neutral tone. This particle, often indicating ownership, is the most frequently used character in Chinese.

Radical: 白 'white'

Index # 125

Character components: 白 + 勺

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 的 de particle

她有一双大大的眼睛。

Tā yǒu yī shuāng dàdà de yǎnjīng.

She has big eyes (literally, a pair of big eyes).

2. 辣的 là de chilli hot

我爱吃辣的。

Wǒ ài chī là de.

I love spicy food.

3. 昨天的 zuótiān de yesterday's

这是昨天的报。

Zhè shì zuótiān de bào.

This is yesterday's newspaper.

4. 有的 yǒude some

有的是新的, 有的是旧的。

Yǒude shì xīn de, yǒude shì jiù de.

Some are new, some are old.

Write the final stroke firmly.

8 strokes

'	亻	白	白	白	勺	的	的					

朋

péng friend

The character signifies two *friends* standing side by side.

Radical: 月 'flesh/moon'

Index # 103

Character components: 月 + 月

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 朋 péng friend
昨晚 亲朋 戚友 聚在一起 真高兴。
Zuówǎn qīn-péng qī-yǒu jù zài yìqǐ zhēn gāoxìng.
It was very happy to have relatives and friends gathered together last night.
2. 朋友 péngyou friend
你有 中国 朋友 吗?
Nǐ yǒu Zhōngguó péngyou ma?
Do you have any Chinese friends?
3. 男朋友 nán péngyou boy friend
她 跟 男朋友 住 在一起。
Tā gēn nán péngyou zhù zài yìqǐ.
She lives with her boy friend.
4. 女朋友 nǚ péngyou girl friend
你 有 女朋友 了 没有?
Nǐ yǒu nǚ péngyou le méiyǒu?
Do you have a steady girl friend?
5. 老朋友 lǎo péngyou old friend
难得 有 机会 跟 老朋友 聚 在一起。
Nándé yǒu jīhuì gēn lǎo péngyou jù zài yìqǐ.
Old friends don't often get the chance to meet.

The right component is written slightly wider.

8 strokes

丿	月	月	月	月	朋	朋	朋					

友

yǒu friend

The character depicts two hands, a symbol of *friendship*.

Radical: 又 'again'

Index # 24

Character components: 丌 + 又

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 友 yǒu friend

他是我十多年的好友。

Tā shì wǒ shí duō nián de hǎo yǒu.

He has been my good friend for over ten years.

2. 友情 yǒuqíng friendship

他很重友情。

Tā hěn zhòng yǒuqíng.

He values friendship greatly.

3. 友谊 yǒuyì friendship

友谊第一，比赛第二。

Yǒuyì dìyī, bǐsài dì'èr.

Friendship first, competition second.

4. 友好 yǒuhǎo friendly

他对人很友好。

Tā duì rén hěn yǒuhǎo.

He's a friendly person.

5. 走亲访友 zǒu-qīn fǎng-yǒu visiting relatives and friends

中国普通的老百姓走亲

Zhōngguó pǔtōng de lǎobǎixìng zǒu-qīn

访友都是骑自行车。

fǎng-yǒu dōu shì qí zìxíngchē.

Ordinary people in China use bicycles to visit their relatives and friends.

The long horizontal stroke covers 又.

4 strokes

一	丌	方	友									

学

xuē learn

學

The character combines a *child* 子 studying under a *roof* 宀 to suggest *learning*.

Radical: 子 'child'

Index # 67

Character components: 宀 + 子

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 学 xué study, learn

只要 努力,一定 能 学会。

Zhǐyào nǔlì, yíding néng xuéhuì.

If you work hard, you will master it.

2. 学生 xuésheng student

中国 学生 很 认真 学习。

Zhōngguó xuésheng hěn rènzhēn xuéxí.

Chinese students are very studious.

3. 学习 xuéxí learn

应该 学习 别人 的 长处。

Yīnggāi xuéxí biérén de chángchù.

One should learn from others' strong points.

4. 学校 xuéxiào school

这个 学校 有点 儿 名气。

Zhè ge xuéxiào yǒu diǎnr míngqì.

This school has a good reputation.

5. 学费 xuéfei tuition fees

念 大学 一年 的 学费 是 多少?

Niàn dàxué yì nián de xuéfei shì duōshao?

How much are the annual university tuition fees?

The first two dots slant to the right.

8 strokes

丶	丶	㇀	㇀	㇀	学	学	学					

不

bù / bú not

The character is usually pronounced in the 4th tone except when it is followed by another 4th tone syllable, which changes it into the 2nd tone.

Radical: 一 ‘horizontal stroke’

Index # 2

Character component: 不

Character configuration: 

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 不 bù not
昨天他说今天不来了。
Zuótiān tā shuō jīntiān bù lái le.
He said yesterday that he won't be coming today.
2. 不多不少 bùduō bùshǎo just right
你买的水果不多不少，正好。
Nǐ mǎi de shuǐguǒ bùduō bùshǎo, zhèng hǎo.
You bought just the right amount of fruit — not too much, not too little.
3. 不错 búcuò quite good
这个字写得不错。
Zhè ge zì xiěde búcuò.
This character is quite well written.
4. 不好意思 bùhǎo yìsi embarrassed
让你久等了，真不好意思。
Ràng nǐ jiǔ děng le, zhēn bù hǎo yìsi.
I'm sorry to have kept you waiting.
5. 不久 bùjiǔ not for a long time
你走了不久，他就来了。
Nǐ zǒule bùjiǔ, tā jiù lái le.
He came soon after you left.

The last stroke ends firmly.

4 strokes

一	丿	丿	不									

英

yīng hero

The character originally meant *flower*, it combines the grass radical 艹 and the phonetic 央. It means *outstanding*.

Radical: 艹 ‘grass’

Index # 42

Character components: 艹 + 央

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 英 yīng hero

学校 开了一个 群英会 庆祝

Xuéxiào kāile yí ge qúnyīnghuì qīngzhù

运动会 的结束。

yùndònghuì de jiěshù.

The school organized a celebration for the participants at the end of the sports carnival.

2. 英俊 yīngjùn handsome

这个 小伙子 长得 很 英俊。

Zhè ge xiǎohuǒzi zhǎngde hěn yīngjùn.

This young lad is quite handsome.

3. 英国 Yīngguó England

每年 去 英国 的 人 很多。

Měinián qù Yīngguó de rén hěnduō.

Many people travel to the UK every year.

4. 英语 Yīngyǔ English language

中国 有 很多 人 学 英语。

Zhōngguó yǒu hěnduō rén xué Yīngyǔ.

Many people in China study English.

5. 英里 yīnglǐ mile

美国 还 用 英里, 不用 公里。

Měiguó hái yòng yīnglǐ, bùyòng gōnglǐ.

The United States still uses miles, not kilometers.

The seventh stroke crosses the fifth stroke.

8 strokes

一	十	艹	𦰩	𦰪	𦰫	𦰬	英					

文

wén script, language

The character represents a pattern used on ancient earthenware. It took on the meaning of character or *writing*.

Radical: 文 'script'

Index # 73

Character components: 亠 + 乂

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 文 wén language, script
这篇文章写得文不对题。
Zhè piān wénzhāng xiěde wén bú duì tí.
This essay was irrelevant to the topic.
2. 英文 Yīngwén English language
你的英文说得很好。
Nǐde Yīngwén shuōde hěn hǎo.
You speak English very well.
3. 文字 wénzì written language
这是有文字可考的历史。
Zhè shì yǒu wénzì kěkǎo de lìshǐ.
This is a documented history.
4. 文化 wénhuà civilization
我想研究中国文化。
Wǒ xiǎng yánjiū Zhōngguó wénhuà.
I want to study Chinese civilization.
5. 文学 wénxué literature
我想研究中国文学。
Wǒ xiǎng yánjiū Zhōngguó wénxué.
I want to study Chinese literature.

The third stroke sweeps left.

4 strokes

丶	亠	㇇	文										

Quiz 4 (31–40)

A. Look at the 9-character grid and **CIRCLE** words or phrases. They can be found horizontally from left to right or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. **COPY** the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

Word or phrase			Pinyin	Meaning
她	朋	友	(i)	
学	英	文	(ii)	
不	谁	的	(iii)	

B. Refer to the characters in the 9-character grid above and **CONVERT** the pinyin sentences into characters. You might like to check their English meaning in the Key. Note that the pronouns for *he* or *she* have the same pronunciation *tā* but are written with different characters. Check the character for ‘*he*.’

(i)	Shuí/shéi’de péngyou?									
(ii)	Tā xué buxué Zhōngwén?									
(iii)	Bù, tā xué Yīngwén.									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)

中文

文 huà
 辣的
 有的
 昨天的
 英 guō
 英 lǐ
 英文

the United Kingdom
 spicy (chilli hot)
 English language
 Chinese language
 yesterday’s
 civilization
 some
 mile

(ii)
 女朋友
 老朋友
 友好
 学 sheng
 学 xī
 学 xiào
 不 jiǔ
 不 shǎo

study
 girl friend
 school
 a short time
 old friend/s
 quite a few
 friendly
 student



huì able to



The simplified form of the character combines *person* 人 with *speak* 云 to give the idea of people speaking in a *meeting*.

Radical: 人 'person'**Index # 18****Character components:** 人 + 云**Character configuration:****Compounds, sentences and meanings**

1. 会 huì be able to

我会英语，不会法语。

Wǒ huì Yīngyǔ, bù huì Fǎyǔ.

I speak English but I don't speak French.

2. 会 huì be likely to

明天会下雨吗？

Míngtiān huì xià yǔ ma?

Will it rain tomorrow?

3. 一会儿 yíhuìr a moment

请你等一会儿。

Qǐng nǐ děng yíhuìr.

Please wait for a while.

4. 会话 huìhuà conversation

学语言应该多听会话。

Xué yǔyán yīnggāi duō tīng huìhuà.

You should listen to lots of conversation when learning a language.

5. 会议 huìyì meeting

会议进行中，请勿打扰。

Huìyì jìnxíng zhōng, qǐng wù dǎjiǎo.

Meeting in progress, please do not disturb.

The last stroke ends firmly.**6 strokes**

ノ	人	亼	亼	会	会								

写

xiě write

寫

The simplified form combines *flat roof* 冫 with the character 与 and in the process loses the dot on the top. It means *to write*.

Radical: 冫 'flat roof'

Index # 8

Character components: 冫 + 与

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 写 xiě write

这个字写得很好。

Zhè ge zì xiěde hěn hǎo.

This character is well-written.

2. 写作 xiězuò writing

我觉得写作最难学。

Wǒ juéde xiězuò zuì nán xué.

I think writing is the hardest thing to learn.

3. 大写 dàxiě upper case/capital letter

名字缩写应该用大写。

Míngzi suōxiě yīnggāi yòng dàxiě.

Initials for names should be written in capital letters.

4. 小写 xiǎoxiě lower case

一般的词应该用小写。

Yībān de cí yīnggāi yòng xiǎoxiě.

Ordinary words should be written in lower case.

5. 书写 shūxiě hand-written

书写没有打印好看。

Shūxiě méiyǒu dǎyìn hǎokàn.

Handwriting doesn't look as good as printing.

The third stroke has two bends ending with a hook.

5 strokes

'	冫	写	写	写								

duō many, much

The character combines two evenings or moons to mean *many*.

Radical: 夕 'evening'

Index # 56

Character components: 夕 + 夕

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 多 duō many
里面 有 很多 人。
Lǐmiàn yǒu hěnduō rén.
There are many people inside.
2. 多少 duōshao how many
你 认识 多少 汉字?
Nǐ rènshi duōshao Hànzì?
How many Chinese characters do you know?
3. 多半 duōbān more often than not
星期天 他 多半 上 这儿来。
Xīngqītiān tā duōbān shàng zhèr lái.
He comes over on Sundays quite often.
4. 多数 duōshù majority
我们 是 多数。
Wǒmen shì duōshù.
We are in the majority.
5. 多么 duōme how, what
多么 新鲜 的 水果 啊!
Duōme xīnxiān de shuǐguǒ a!
How fresh the fruit is!

The top component rides on top of the lower one.

6 strokes

ノ	夕	夕	多	多	多							

shǎo/shào few, less; young

The character combines *small* 小 with an added 丿 stroke representing a sword, cutting a small object even smaller. It means *few*.

Radical: 小 'small'

Index # 49

Character components: 小 + 丿

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>1. 少 shǎo few
上海 很少 下雪。
Shànghǎi hěnnǎo xiàxuě.
<i>It seldom snows in Shanghai.</i></p> <p>2. 不少 bùshǎo quite a lot
这次旅行 花了 不少 钱。
Zhè cì lǚxíng huāle bùshǎo qián.
<i>I spent quite a lot of money on this trip.</i></p> <p>3. 少数 shǎoshù minority
少数 服从 多数。
Shǎoshù fú cóng duōshù.
<i>The minority is subordinate to the majority.</i></p> | <p>4. 多少 duōshǎo how many
你 认识 多少 汉字?
Nǐ rènshi duōshǎo Hànzì?
<i>How many Chinese characters do you know?</i></p> <p>5. 少年 shàonián juvenile
西方 国家的 少年 犯罪 比较多。
Xīfāng guójiā de shàonián fànzuì bǐjiào duō.
<i>Juvenile delinquency is more common in Western countries.</i></p> |
|--|---|

The last stroke tapers off.

4 strokes

丨	丿	小	少										

个

ge [classifier]

個

This character is pronounced in the neutral tone when used as a *general classifier* for most nouns. When used in the 4th tone, 个 means *individual*.

Radical: 人 ‘person’

Index # 18

Character components: 人 + 丨

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 个 ge classifier
洗个澡, 休息休息。
Xǐ ge zǎo, xiūxi xiūxi.
Have a shower and then rest.
2. 两个 liǎng ge a couple of
请给我两个。
Qǐng gěi wǒ liǎng ge.
Please give me two.
3. 个个 gègè each
你的孩子个个都很聪明。
Nǐde háizi gègè dōu hěn cōngmíng.
All your children are very bright.
4. 个人 gèrén individual
我个人认为这样做不对。
Wǒ gèrén rènwéi zhèyàng zuò búduì.
In my opinion this is not the way to do it.
5. 个别 gèbié individual (adjective)
我喜欢个别辅导。
Wǒ xǐhuan gèbié fūdǎo.
I prefer individual tuition.

The second stroke joins the first stroke at the top.

3 strokes

ノ	人	个										

汉

Hàn

ethnic Han Chinese

Full form

漢

The full form combines *water* 氵 with the phonetic 莫 to mean *the dominant ethnic group in China*. The phonetic is replaced by the stereotype 又 in simplification.

Radical: 氵 ‘3 drops of water’

Index # 32

Character components: 氵 + 又

Character configuration:

--	--

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 汉 hàn person
不到 长城 非 好汉。
Bú dào Chángchéng fēi hǎohàn.
You are not a true person if you haven't been to the Great Wall of China.
2. 汉语 Hànyǔ Chinese language
你的 汉语 说得 很 不错。
Nǐde Hànyǔ shuōde hěn búcuò.
You speak Chinese very well.
3. 汉字 Hànzì Chinese characters
我 觉得 汉字 很 有意思。
Wǒ juéde Hànzì hěn yǒu yìsi.
I think Chinese characters are very interesting.
4. 汉族 Hānzú ethnic Han Chinese
汉族 在 新疆 占 少数。
Hānzú zài Xīnjiāng zhàn shǎoshù.
Ethnic Hans are in the minority in Xinjiang.
5. 汉学 Hànxué Chinese studies
她 研究 汉学。
Tā yánjiū Hànxué.
She is doing research in Chinese studies.

The third stroke simply lifts with no bend.

5 strokes

丶	丶	丶	丶	汉								

认

rèn recognize

Full form

認

The full form combines *speech* 言 and the phonetic 忍 to suggest the idea of *recognition*.
The simplified form is 认.

Radical: 讠 'word'

Index # 9

Character components: 讠 + 人

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 认 rèn recognize
你变多了，都认不出你了。
Nǐ biàn duō le, dōu rènbuchū nǐ le.
You've changed so much that I hardly recognized you.
2. 认识 rènshi be acquainted with
认识你，很高兴。
Rènshi nǐ, hěn gāoxìng.
I'm pleased to meet you.
3. 认字 rènzì read characters
我现在学认字。
Wǒ xiānzài xué rènzì.
I'm learning to read characters.
4. 认得 rènde know, recognize
你还认得我吗？
Nǐ hái rènde wǒ ma?
Do you still recognize me?
5. 认真 rènzhēn conscientious
她工作很认真。
Tā gōngzuò hěn rènzhēn.
She is conscientious in her work.

The last stroke joins the previous stroke mid-way down.

4 strokes

丶	讠	讠	认									

识

shí know

識

The full form combines *speech* 言 and the component 戠 to suggest the idea of *knowledge*.
The simplified form is 识.

Radical: 讠 'word'

Index #9

Character components: 讠 + 只

Character configuration:

--	--

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 识 shí know

这个 农民 一字不识。

Zhè ge nóngmín yí zì bù shí.*This peasant is completely illiterate (literally, knows not one word).*

2. 识别 shíbié distinguish

他 不能 识别 真假 朋友。

Tā bù néng shíbié zhēnjiǎ péngyou.*He cannot distinguish true friends from false ones.*

3. 识货 shíhuò able to tell value in goods

买 东西 要 识货。

Mǎi dōngxi yào shíhuò.*You need to know the value of things when shopping.*

4. 识字 shízì become literate

这 是 识字 课本。

Zhè shì shízì kèběn.*This is a reading primer.*

5. 学识 xuéshí knowledge

这 位 老先生 的 学识 很 广。

Zhè wèi lǎoxiānsheng de xuéshí hěn guǎng.*This old gentleman is very learned.*

The last stroke finishes firmly.

7 strokes

丶	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠						

说

shuō speak

說

The character combines *speech* 讠 and *exchange* 兑 to give the idea of oral communication between people. It means *to speak*.

Radical: 讠 'word'

Index #9

Character components: 讠 + 兑

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 说 shuō speak
请 听 我 说。
Qǐng tīng wǒ shuō.
Please listen to what I have to say.
2. 说话 shuōhuà speak
我 爸爸 不 太 爱 说话。
Wǒ bàba bú tài ài shuōhuà.
My father doesn't like to talk much.
3. 说谎 shuōhuǎng tell a lie
小 孩 子 不 要 学 说谎。
Xiǎoháizi bùyào xué shuōhuǎng.
Children should learn not to tell lies.
4. 说不定 shuōbùdìng maybe
说 不 定 他 已 经 走 了。
Shuōbùdìng tā yǐjīng zǒu le.
Maybe he's already left.
5. 说服 shuōfú convince
她 说 服 了 我。
Tā shuōfúle wǒ.
She has convinced me.

The last stroke ends with a hook.

9 strokes

丶	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠	说				

语

yǔ language

語

The character combines *speech* 讠, *mouth* 口 and *five* 五 to mean *talking or language*.

Radical: 讠 ‘word’

Index #9

Character components: 讠 + 五 + 口

Character configuration:

--	--

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 语 yǔ language

你的法语说得很好。

Nǐde Fǎyǔ shuōde hěn hǎo.

You speak French very well.

2. 外语 wàiyǔ foreign language

我没学过外语。

Wǒ méi xuéguo wàiyǔ.

I have never studied a foreign language.

3. 语法 yǔfǎ grammar

中文语法不太难。

Zhōngwén yǔfǎ bú tài nán.

Chinese grammar is not too difficult.

4. 语言 yǔyán language

北京语言文化大学。

Běijīng Yǔyán Wénhuà Dàxué

Beijing Language and Culture University

5. 语气 yǔqì manner of speaking

她用婉转的语气说。

Tā yòng wǎnzhuǎn de yǔqì shuō.

She speaks in a tactful manner.

语 is easily confused with 话.

9 strokes

、	讠	讠	讠	讠	语	语	语	语				

Quiz 5 (41–50)

A. Look at the 9-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally from left to right or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

Word or phrase			Pinyin	Meaning
多	少	说	(i)	
写	会	汉	(ii)	
认	识	语	(iii)	

B. Refer to the characters in the 9-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin sentences into characters and check their English meaning in the Key. Look up characters you have learnt in previous sets.

(i)	Nǐ huì shuō Hànyǔ ma?									
(ii)	Nǐ huì buhuì xiě Hànzì?									
(iii)	Nǐ huì xiě duōshao Hànzì?									
(iv)	Tā bǔhuì xiě Hànzì.									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)	多 shù	minority	(ii)	一会儿	become literate
	少 shǎo	speak		会 huà	Chinese language
	说 huà	English language		写 zuò	a moment
	说不 dīng	maybe		大写	writing
	说 fū	majority		个人	conversation
	wài 语	convince		认 de	capital letters
	英语	grammar		识字	individual
	语 fā	foreign language		汉语	recognize

CHARACTER BUILDING 1 (1-50)

A. Memorize the following radicals and their English names. As a review exercise, write the pinyin and meaning of each example:

1. [一] 'horizontal stroke'

一 (yi) one ; 三 () ;
五 () ; 七 () ;
不 () .

2. [丿] 'downward-left stroke'

九 () ; 么 () ;

3. [讠] 'word'

请 () ; 谁 () ;
认 () ; 识 () ;
语 () ; 说 () .

4. [人] 'person'

人 () ; 个 () ;
会 () .

5. [亻] 'upright person'

你 () ; 他 () ;
什 () .

6. [口] 'mouth'

叫 () ; 哪 () ;
名 () ; 吗 () .

7. [口] '4-sided frame'

四 () ; 国 () ;

8. [女] 'female'

好 () ; 她 () ;
姓 () .

B. Write the pinyin and meaning against the characters classified under the following radicals.

- | | | | |
|-----------|--------------------|---|-----------|
| 1. [丨] | 'vertical stroke' | 中 | () _____ |
| 2. [八] | 'eight' | 八 | () _____ |
| 3. [冂] | 'flat roof' | 写 | () _____ |
| 4. [二] | 'two' | 二 | () _____ |
| 5. [六] | 'top of 六' | 六 | () _____ |
| 6. [十] | 'ten' | 十 | () _____ |
| 7. [又] | 'again' | 友 | () _____ |
| 8. [氵] | '3 drops of water' | 汉 | () _____ |
| 9. [艹] | 'grass' | 英 | () _____ |
| 10. [小] | 'small' | 少 | () _____ |
| 11. [夕] | 'sunset' | 多 | () _____ |
| 12. [文] | 'script' | 文 | () _____ |
| 13. [心] | 'heart' | 您 | () _____ |
| 14. [戈] | 'spear' | 我 | () _____ |
| 15. [日] | 'sun' | 是 | () _____ |
| 16. [贝] | 'sea shell' | 贵 | () _____ |
| 17. [白] | 'white' | 白 | () _____ |
| 18. [羊] | 'sheep' | 美 | () _____ |

C. Write the pinyin and meaning against the characters which share the following components.
(Note that these components are not necessarily used as radicals.)

- | | | |
|----------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. [夕] | 名 () _____ ; | 多 () _____ . |
| 2. [口] | 名 () _____ ; | 问 () _____ . |
| 3. [中] | 中 () _____ ; | 贵 () _____ . |
| 4. [子] | 好 () _____ ; | 学 () _____ . |
| | 字 () _____ ; | |
| 5. [又] | 汉 () _____ ; | 友 () _____ . |
| 6. [也] | 他 () _____ ; | 她 () _____ . |
| 7. [人] | 人 () _____ ; | 认 () _____ . |
| 8. [小] | 你 () _____ ; | 少 () _____ . |

REVIEW 1 (1-50)

The following are words and phrases classified under parts of speech. Write the pinyin and meaning for each word/phrase.

Pronouns	我 (wǒ) I, me ;	我的 () :
	你 () ;	你的 () ;
	他 () ;	他的 () ;
	她 () ;	她的 () .
Interrogative pronouns	什么 () ;	哪 () ;
	谁 () ;	多少 () ;
Nouns	人 () ;	朋友 () ;
	中文 () ;	英文 () ;
	汉语 () ;	英语 () ;
	汉字 () ;	中国 () ;
	英国 () ;	美国 () .
Verbs	叫 () ;	姓 () ;
	是 () ;	问 () ;
	学 () ;	写 () ;
	会 () ;	认识 () ;
Numbers	一 () ;	二 () ;
	三 () ;	四 () ;
	五 () ;	六 () ;
	七 () ;	八 () ;
	九 () ;	十 () ;
Classifiers	个 () .	
Noun phrases	中文名字 () ;	
	英文名字 () ;	
	中国朋友 () ;	
	英国朋友 () ;	
	美国朋友 () ;	
	谁的朋友 () ;	
	哪国人 () .	

WORD/SENTENCE PUZZLE 1

Find and CIRCLE words, phrases or sentences hidden in the puzzle. They can be found horizontally from left to right or vertically . The lines across and down are indicated by numbers. Write the meaning next to the pinyin. The first one is done for you.

ACROSS (left to right)

2. (i) Zhōngguó péngyou
- Chinese friend/s
- (ii) huī xiě
3. bù shuō
4. Nǐ rènshi duōshao Hànzì?
8. Guìguó shì nǎguó?

DOWN

1. Nǐ shì nǎguórén?
2. Yīngguó
- 3 (i) shízì
- (ii) Nín guìxīng?
- 5 (i) bùshǎo
- (ii) shìde
6. Nǐ huì shuō Hànyǔ ma?
7. Měiguórén

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
1	六	英	友	一	三	你	八
2	中	国	朋	友	叫	会	写
3	名	哪	写	您	不	说	十
4	你	认	识	多	少	汉	字
5	是	会	字	我	名	语	么
6	哪	七	五	英	多	吗	她
7	国	四	您	二	谁	他	美
8	人	的	贵	国	是	哪	国
9	问	请	姓	学	的	九	人

们

men [plural suffix]

們

The plural suffix is always pronounced in the neutral tone. It is mainly added to pronouns but occasionally used after nouns as a form of address for more than one person.

Radical: 亻 ‘upright person’

Index # 19

Character components: 亻 + 门

Character configuration:

--	--

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 你们 **nǐmen** you (plural)
请 你们 等 一下, 我 马上 回来。
Qǐng nǐmen děng yíxià, wǒ mǎshàng huílai.
Please wait a moment, I'll be right back.
2. 咱们 **zánmen** we, us (referring to those spoken to)
咱们 商量 一下。
Zánmen shāngliang yíxià.
Let's talk it over.
3. 女士们 **nǚshìmen** ladies
女士们 先生们, 你们 好!
Nǚshìmen, xiānshengmen, nǐmen hǎo!
Ladies and gentlemen! Greetings!
4. 男士们 **nánshìmen** gentlemen
通常 是 男士们 邀请 女士们
Tōngcháng shì nánshìmen yāoqǐng nǚshìmen
跳舞。
tiàowǔ.
Generally it is the men who ask the ladies for a dance.
5. 哥儿们 **gēermen** buddies
朋友 之间 分得 太 清 就 不够
Péngyou zhījiān fēnde tài qīng jiù bùgòu
哥儿们了。
gēermen le.
If friends become too calculating, then there's not much friendship between them.

The last stroke ends with a hook.

5 strokes

ノ	亻	亻	们	们								

有

yǒu have

The character combines the pictograph 扌, the figure of a *hand*, and *flesh* 月 to signify *flesh in hand*, thus giving the meaning of *to have* or *to exist*.

Radical: 月 'flesh/moon'

Index # 103

Character components: 扌 + 月

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 有 yǒu have, has
我 有一个哥哥。
Wǒ yǒu yí ge gēge.
I have an older brother.
2. 有名 yǒumíng famous
这个 演员 很有名。
Zhè ge yǎnyuán hěn yǒumíng.
This actor is very famous.
3. 有钱 yǒuqián rich
很多 有钱 人 住 在这里。
Hěnduō yǒuqián rén zhù zài zhèlǐ.
Many rich people live here.
4. 有意思 yǒu yìsi interesting
今天 的 晚会 很 有意思。
Jīntiān de wǎnhuì hěn yǒu yìsi.
The performance tonight was enjoyable.
5. 有害 yǒuhài harmful
吸烟 对 身体 有害。
Xīyān duì shēntǐ yǒuhài.
Smoking is harmful to one's health.

The stroke ends with a hook.

6 strokes

一	扌	才	有	有	有								

没

méi not have

沒

The full form combines *water* 氵 with the phonetic 殳 to give the idea of *death by drowning*, or *not have*.

Radical: 氵 ‘3 drops of water’

Index # 32

Character components: 氵 + 殳

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 没 méi not have, did not
昨天 银行 没 开门。
Zuótiān yínháng méi kāimén.
The bank was closed yesterday.
2. 没有 méiyǒu not have
里面 没有 人。
Lǐmiàn méiyǒu rén.
There's no one inside.
3. 没关系 méi guānxi it doesn't matter
他来不来 都 没 关系。
Tā lái bu lái dōu méi guānxi.
It doesn't matter if he comes or not.
4. 没意思 méiyìsi boring
这 本 书 没意思。
Zhè běn shū méiyìsi.
This book is boring.
5. 没完没了 méiwán-méiliǎo endless
她 这么 没完没了 的 唠叨, 烦死 人
Tā zhème méiwán-méiliǎo de láodao, fǎnsǐ rén
了。
le.
Her endless chattering is really driving me up the wall.

The third stroke lifts with no bend.

7 strokes

丶	丿	㇀	㇁	㇂	㇃	㇄							

和

hé and

The character combines *grain* 禾 and *mouth* 口 to suggest the idea of negotiating for *peace*.

Radical: 口 'mouth'

or 禾 'grain'

Character components: 禾 + 口

Index # 50

Index # 124

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 和 hé and

他和我一样高。

Tā hé wǒ yíyàng gāo.

He's as tall as me.

2. 和好 hēhǎo become reconciled

他们吵过架，现在和好了。

Tāmen chǎoguojiā, xiānzài hēhǎo le.

They had a quarrel, but had made it up now.

3. 和平 hépíng peace

我们应该和平解决问题。

Wǒmen yīnggāi hépíng jiějué wèntí.

We should resolve problems peacefully.

4. 和睦 hémù harmonious

我们一家人和睦相处，是个

Wǒmen yì jiā rén hémù xiāngchù, shì ge

幸福的家庭。

xìngfú de jiātīng.

My family gets on well together, ours is a

happy family.

5. 和气 hēqì amiable

父亲对人很和气。

Fùqin duì rén hěn hēqì.

My father is very friendly.

口 is slightly larger when written on the right.

8 strokes

一	二	千	禾	禾	禾	和	和					

哥

gē older brother

The character signifies *older brother* carrying a sibling on his back.

Radical: 一 'horizontal stroke'

or 口 'mouth'

Character components: 可 + 可

Index # 2

Index # 50

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 哥 gē older brother

我哥去年结婚了。

Wǒ gē qùnián jiéhūn le.

My older brother married last year.

2. 哥哥 gēge older brother

我有两个哥哥。

Wǒ yǒu liǎng ge gēge.

I have two older brothers.

3. 大哥 dāgē eldest brother

今天是我大哥的生日。

Jīntiān shì wǒ dāgē de shēngrì.

Today is my oldest brother's birthday.

4. 二哥 èrgē second eldest brother

二哥出国读书了。

Èrgē chūguó dúshū le.

My second older brother has gone abroad to study.

5. 哥儿们 gēermen buddies

朋友之间分得太清就不够

Péngyou zhījiān fēnde tài qīng jiù búgòu

哥儿们了。

gēermen le.

If friends become too calculating, then there's not much mateship between them.

The bottom vertical stroke ends with a hook.

10 strokes

一	丿	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	哥	哥			

姐

jiě older sister

The character combines *female* 女 and the phonetic 且 to give the idea of *older sister*.

Radical: 女 ‘female’

Index # 65

Character components: 女 + 且

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 姐 jiě older sister
我姐快三十岁了。
Wǒ jiě kuài sānshí suì le.
My older sister is nearly thirty.
2. 二姐 èrjiě second oldest sister
我二姐大学快毕业了。
Wǒ èrjiě dàxué kuài bìyè le.
My second oldest sister will soon graduate from university.
3. 姐姐 jiějie older sister
我姐姐比我大十岁。
Wǒ jiějie bǐ wǒ dà shí suì.
My older sister is 10 years older than me.
4. 姐夫 jiěfu older sister's husband,
brother-in-law
我姐夫很照顾我。
Wǒ jiěfu hěn zhàogu wǒ.
My brother-in-law looks after me very well.
5. 小姐 xiǎojie Miss
王小姐今天休假。
Wáng xiǎojie jīntiān xiūjià.
Miss Wang is off work today.

The last horizontal stroke is longer.

8 strokes

ㄥ	ㄣ	女	如	如	姐	姐	姐					

弟

dī younger brother

The character depicts stakes bound with twine. The inverted eight ㄣ represents *low*, and from this came *younger brother*, who is low in position and short in height.

Radical: ㄣ ‘eight’

Index # 17

Character components: ㄣ + 弟

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 弟 dī younger brother

三弟 今年 刚 进 中学。

Sāndī jīnnián gāng jìn zhōngxué.

My third youngest brother has just started secondary school.

2. 弟弟 dìdì younger brother

你 有 没有 弟弟?

Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu dìdì?

Do you have a younger brother?

3. 弟兄 dìxiōng brothers

他 就 弟兄 一个。

Tā jiù dìxiōng yí ge.

He's the only son of the family.

4. 弟媳 dìxí wife of younger brother, sister-in-law

我 弟媳 是 中国人。

Wǒ dìxí shì Zhōngguó rén.

My younger brother's wife is Chinese.

5. 徒弟 túdī disciple, follower

他们 是 师父徒弟 关系。

Tāmen shì shīfu túdī guānxi.

Theirs is a master – disciple relationship.

The fifth stroke ends with a hook.

7 strokes

丶	ㄣ	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	弟	弟						

妹

mèi younger sister

The character combines *immature* 未 and *female* 女 to mean *younger sister*.

Radical: 女 'female'

Index # 65

Character components: 女 + 未

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 妹 mèi younger sister
我妹还很小。
Wǒ mèi hái hěn xiǎo.
My younger sister is still quite small.
2. 三妹 sānmèi third youngest sister
我三妹在中学学习。
Wǒ sānmèi zài zhōngxué xuéxí.
My third youngest sister is in high school.
3. 小妹 xiǎomèi youngest sister
我小妹在小学学习。
Wǒ xiǎomèi zài xiǎoxué xuéxí.
My youngest sister is in primary school.
4. 妹夫 mèifu younger sister's husband,
brother-in-law
我妹夫在小学教书。
Wǒ mèifu zài xiǎoxué jiāoshū.
My younger sister's husband teaches in a
primary school.
5. 姐妹 jiěmèi sisters
她没有姐妹，只有一个哥哥。
Tā méiyǒu jiěmèi, zhǐ yǒu yí ge gēge.
She has no sisters, only an older brother.

The horizontal stroke on the right-hand side is longer than the one above.

8 strokes

丶	㇀	女	𠂇	𠂈	𠂉	妹						

还

hái/huán still, return

還

The full form combines *movement* 辶 with the phonetic cycle 還. Thus, it means to *return*. Another meaning is *still*.

Radical: 辶 'movement'

Index # 38

Character components: 不 + 辶

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 还 hái still

他还在睡觉。

Tā hái zài shuìjiào.

He's still sleeping.

2. 还有 hái yǒu still more

我有一个姐姐, 还有一个妹妹。

Wǒ yǒu yí ge jiějie, hái yǒu yí ge mèimei.

I have an older sister and a younger sister.

3. 还是 hái shì or

他是日本人 还是 韩国人?

Tā shì Rìběnrén hái shì Hánguó rén?

Is he Japanese or Korean?

4. 还 huán return

下个月我就还你钱。

Xià ge yuè wǒ jiù huán nǐ qián.

I'll repay the money next month.

5. 还价 huánjià counter-offer, bid

如果你不想买就别还价。

Rúguǒ nǐ bù xiǎng mǎi jiù bié huánjià.

Don't bid if you don't intend to buy.

Write the middle component before 辶.

7 strokes

一	丿	丿	丿	丿	丿	丿													

两

liǎng two

兩

The character represents two people inside a room. It came to mean *a couple*.

Radical: 一 'horizontal stroke'

Index # 2

Character components: 一 + 冂 + 人 + 人

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 两 liǎng two
这件事过两天再说。
Zhè jiàn shì guò liǎng tiān zài shuō.
Let's leave this matter for a couple of days.
2. 两个 liǎng ge two (of something)
那两个人是谁?
Nà liǎng ge rén shì shéi?
Who are those two people?
3. 两次 liǎng cì twice
我去过两次中国。
Wǒ qùguo liǎng cì Zhōngguó.
I've been to China twice.
4. 两岁 liǎng suì two years (age)
我姐姐比我大两岁。
Wǒ jiějie bǐ wǒ dà liǎng suì.
My older sister is 2 years older than me.
5. 两半儿 liǎngbànr two halves
把苹果切成两半儿。
Bǎ píngguǒ qiēchéng liǎngbànr.
Cut the apple into halves.

从 joins the horizontal stroke.

7 strokes

一	冂	冂	冂	冂	两	两						

Quiz 6 (51–60)

A. Look at the 16-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally from left to right or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

Word or phrase				Pinyin	Meaning		
姐	个	妹	弟	(i)	美 国 人	Měiguórén	American/s
美	她	们	和	(ii)			
国	还	是	两	(iii)			
人	没	有	哥	(iv)			

B. Refer to the characters in the 16-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin phrases into characters and then check their English meaning in the Key.

(i)	Wǒ yǒu liǎng ge mèimei.									
(ii)	Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu jiějie?									
(iii)	Tāmen shì Měiguórén. (all females)									
(iv)	Tā yǒu gēge hé dìdì.									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)	dà 姐	second younger sister	(ii)	没 guānxi	twice
	二妹	younger brother's wife		和 qì	it doesn't matter
	dà 哥	oldest sister		还有	interesting
	xiǎo 姐	sisters		有 yìsi	famous
	姐妹	youngest sister		两 cì	peace
	xiǎo 妹	Miss		没 yìsi	boring
	弟 xī	disciple		有名	still more
	tú 弟	oldest brother		和 píng	amicable

兄

xiōng older brother

The character combines *mouth* 口 and *son* 儿 to refer to the *first son*.

Radical: 口 ‘mouth’

or 儿 ‘son’

Character component: 口 + 儿

Index # 50

Index # 21

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

- 兄 xiōng** older brother
 你听过 “长兄当父” 这句话
 Nǐ tīngguo “Zhǎng xiōng dāng fù” zhè jù huà
 吗?
 ma?
 Have you heard of the saying that the
 “oldest brother assumes the authority of the
 father?”
- 兄弟 xiōngdì** brothers
 你有几个兄弟姐妹?
 Nǐ yǒu jǐ ge xiōngdì jiěmèi?
 How many brothers and sisters do you have?
- 老兄 lǎoxiōng** brother (polite form of
 address between males)
 老兄, 火车站 在哪儿?
 Lǎoxiōng, huǒchēzhàn zài nǎr?
 Excuse me, brother, where's the railway
 station?
- 大兄弟 dàxiōngdī** title for younger man
 (polite form)
 大兄弟, 这件事就托你了。
 Dàxiōngdī, zhè jiàn shì jiù tuō nǐ le.
 And so, brother, I'll leave the matter in your
 hands.

The last stroke finishes with a hook.

5 strokes

丶	冂	口	尸	兄								

家

jiā family

The character combines *roof* 宀 with *pig* 豕, suggesting a place where pigs and humans are together. It means *home*.

Radical: 宀 'roof'

Index # 34

Character components: 宀 + 豕

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 家 jiā family, home
我 今天 晚上 不在家。
Wǒ jīntiān wǎnshang bú zài jiā.
I won't be home tonight.
2. 家庭 jiātíng family
我 有一个 幸福的 家庭。
Wǒ yǒu yí ge xìngfú de jiātíng.
I have a happy family.
3. 家常菜 jiāchángcài home cooking
我 喜欢 吃 家常菜。
Wǒ xǐhuan chī jiāchángcài.
I'm fond of home cooking.
4. 家务事 jiāwùshì housework
家务事 总 做不完。
Jiāwùshì zǒng zuòbùwán.
Housework is never done.
5. 人家 rénjia other people
人家 的 事情 我们 用不着 管。
Rénjia de shìqing wǒmen yòngbuzhǎo guǎn.
We needn't concern ourselves with others' affairs.

The sixth stroke ends with a hook.

10 strokes

丶	㇀	㇀	㇀	㇀	㇀	㇀	㇀	㇀	㇀			

几

jǐ how many?

幾

The full character originally meant uncertainty. This meaning is lost when the character was simplified.

Radical: 几 'how many'

Index # 22

Character component: 几

Character configuration: 

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 几 jǐ how many (for a small number)
几点了?
Jǐ diǎn le?
What's the time?
2. 几个 jǐ ge how many
你有几个 中国 朋友?
Nǐ yǒu jǐ ge Zhōngguó péngyou?
How many Chinese friends do you have?
3. 几次 jǐ cì how many times
你 去过 中国 几次?
Nǐ qùguo Zhōngguó jǐ cì?
How many times have you been to China?
4. 几时 jǐshí what time
你们 几时 走?
Nǐmen jǐshí zǒu?
What time are you leaving?
5. 几分 jǐfēn somewhat
他 说 的 有 几分道理。
Tā shuō de yǒu jǐfēn dào lǐ.
There's something in what he said.

The character is closed at the top.

2 strokes

丿	几												



kǒu mouth

The character 口 represents the shape of a *mouth*.

Radical: 口 'mouth'

Index # 50

Character component: 口

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 口 kǒu classifier

你家有几口人?

Nǐ jiā yǒu jǐ kǒu rén?

How many are there in your family?

2. 口福 kǒufú gourmet's luck

我今天口福可不浅。

Wǒ jīntiān kǒufú kě bùqiǎn.

I'm really in luck today where food is concerned.

3. 口味 kǒuwèi taste of food

今天换换口味, 吃西餐吧。

Jīntiān huàn huàn kǒuwèi, chī Xīcān ba.

Let's have a change today and have Western food.

4. 口气 kǒuqì tone of voice

她说话有埋怨的口气。

Tā shuō huà yǒu mǎiyuàn de kǒuqì.

There was a note of complaint in what she said.

5. 口音 kǒuyīn accent

她说英语带美国口音。

Tā shuō Yīngyǔ dài Měiguó kǒuyīn.

She speaks English with an American accent.

The last horizontal stroke travels from left to right.

3 strokes

丨	凵	口										

爸

bā father

The character combines *father* 父 with the phonetic 巴 to give the sound, and the meaning *father*.

Radical: 父 ‘father’

Index # 94

Character components: 父 + 巴

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 爸 bā father

我 爸 是 医生。

Wǒ bā shì yīshēng.

My father is a doctor.

2. 爸爸 bāba father

我 爸爸 是 医生。

Wǒ bāba shì yīshēng.

My father is a doctor.

3. 后爸 hòubā stepfather

后爸 也 叫 后爹。

Hòubà yě jiào hòudiē.

Another name for stepfather is hòudiē.

The last stroke ends with a hook.

8 strokes

丶	㇏	㇏	父	𠂇	𠂇	爸						

妈

mā mother

媽

The character combines *woman* 女 with the sound element 马 giving the character the meaning of *mother*.

Radical: 女 'female'

Index # 65

Character components: 女 + 马

Character configuration:

--	--

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 妈 mā mother
妈最疼我。
Mā zuì téng wǒ.
Mum loves me most.
2. 妈妈 māma mother
妈妈常常给我补衣服。
Māma chángcháng gěi wǒ bǔ yīfu.
Mum often mends my clothes.
3. 后妈 hòumā stepmother
后妈也叫后母。
Hòumā yě jiào hòumǔ.
Another name for stepmother is hòumǔ.
4. 姨妈 yímā aunt (mother's married sister)
姨妈是妈妈已婚的姐姐或妹妹。
Yímā shì māma yīhūn de jiějie huò mèimei.
Yímā refers to a married maternal aunt.
5. 姑妈 gūmā aunt (father's married sister)
姑妈是爸爸已婚的姐姐或妹妹。
Gūmā shì bàba yīhūn de jiějie huò mèimei.
Gūmā refers to a married paternal aunt.

The fifth stroke ends with a hook.

6 strokes

㇏	㇏	女	妈	妈								

这 zhè this

這

The full form combines *movement* 辶 with the phonetic 言 to suggest the idea of *this*. In simplification the phonetic 言 is changed to 文 for faster writing of the strokes.

Radical: 辶 ‘movement’

Index # 38

Character components: 文 + 辶

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 这 zhè this
这 消息 我 知道了。
Zhè xiāoxi wǒ zhīdao le.
I've already heard that news.
2. 这个 zhè ge this one
我 就 买 这个。
Wǒ jiù mǎi zhè ge.
I'll buy this one.
3. 这儿 zhèr here
这儿 不准 停车。
Zhèr bùzhǔn tíngchē.
Parking is prohibited here.
4. 这些 zhèxiē these
这些 日子 我们 特别 忙。
Zhèxiē rìzi wǒmen tèbié máng.
We've been really busy lately.
5. 这样 zhèyàng this way
我 觉得 这样 做 会 快一点儿。
Wǒ juéde zhèyàng zuò huì kuàiyìdiǎnr.
I think this way is faster.

The fourth stroke finishes firmly.

7 strokes

丶	㇇	㇇	文	文	汶	这						

也

yě also

Not many characters contain this component 也. Certainly the pronoun 'he' has it and the pronoun 'she' also has it. It means *also*.

Radical: 冫 'horizontal-bend-hook'

Index # 5

Character component: 也

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 也 yě also
我 妈妈 也 是 老师。
Wǒ māma yě shì lǎoshī.
My mother is also a teacher.
2. 也... 也 ... yě ... yě ...either ... or ...
他 也 不 抽 烟, 也 不 喝 酒。
Tā yě bù chōuyān, yě bù hējiǔ.
He neither smokes nor drinks.
3. 也许 yěxǔ perhaps
也许 我 不 该 告 诉 她。
Yěxǔ wǒ bù gāi gàosu tā.
Perhaps I shouldn't have told her.
4. ... 也罢 ... 也罢 ... yěbà ... yěbà whether ... or
你 去 也 罢, 不 去 也 罢, 反 正 是 一 样。
Nǐ qù yěba, bú qù yěba, fǎnzhèng shì yíyàng.
It makes no difference whether you go or not.
5. 也好 yěhǎo may as well
你 说 明 一 下 也 好。
Nǐ shuōmíng yíxià yě hǎo.
Maybe you'd better give an explanation.

The first stroke is a horizontal-bend-hook.

3 strokes

丿	乚	也										

老

lǎo old

The character is a pictograph depicting a long-haired hunchback holding a walking stick. It means *old*.

Radical: 老 'old'

Index # 136

Character components: 土 + 丿 + 匕

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 老 lǎo old
他老了, 走路 走 不 快了。
Tā lǎo le, zǒulù zǒu bú kuài le.
He's getting old, he can no longer walk fast.
2. 老大 lǎodà oldest sibling
我 家 三 兄 弟, 我 是 老 大。
Wǒ jiā sān xiōngdì, wǒ shì lǎodà.
Of the three brothers in my family, I'm the eldest.
3. 老婆 lǎopo wife
他 说 他 老 婆 不 会 做 饭。
Tā shuō tā lǎopo búhuì zuòfàn.
He says his wife can't cook.
4. 老外 lǎowài foreigner
很 多 老 外 说 汉 语 都 说 得 很
Hěnduō lǎowài shuō Hànyǔ dōu shuōde hěn
好。
hǎo.
Many foreigners can speak Mandarin very well.
5. 老实 lǎoshi frank, honest
老 实 说, 我 不 赞 成 这 个 意 见。
Lǎoshi shuō, wǒ bú zànchéng zhè ge yìjiàn.
Frankly speaking, I don't like the idea at all.

The last stroke is a downward left stroke.

6 strokes

一	十	土	𠂔	𠂔	老							

Quiz 7 (61–70)

A. Find and CIRCLE words, phrases or sentences hidden in the puzzle. They can be found horizontally or vertically from left to right. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

				Word or phrase	Pinyin	Meaning
家	口	姐	人	(i)	老 师	lǎoshī teacher
和	兄	妹	还	(ii)		
老	弟	爸	有	(iii)		
师	几	妈	哥	(iv)		

B. CONVERT the following pinyin sentences into characters. Some of the characters you need can be found in the 16-character grid above. Check the English meaning in the Key.

(i)	Wǒ jiā yǒu sì kǒu rén.									
(ii)	Bàba, māma, jiějie hé wǒ.									
(iii)	Wǒ māma shì lǎoshī.									
(iv)	Nǐ yǒu jǐ ge xiōngdì jiěmèi?									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)	家 tīng	wife	(ii)	这 xiē	honest
	老大	master		家 wùshì	perhaps
	hòu 妈	oldest sibling		这 yàng	these
	师 fu	stepfather		人口	in this way
	兄弟	family		老 shì	housework
	gū 妈	stepmother		也 xǔ	population
	老 po	father's married sister		这 èr	accent
	hòu 爸	brother		口 yīn	here

很

hěn very

The character combines *crossroad* 彳 with the figure of a *person looking back* 艮 to express the idea of *very*.

Radical: 彳 ‘double person’

Index # 54

Character components: 彳 + 艮

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 很 hěn very
他这个人好得很。
Tā zhè ge rén hǎode hěn.
He's a very good man.
2. 很好 hěn hǎo very good/well
这个汉字你写得很 好。
Zhè ge Hànzì nǐ xiěde hěn hǎo.
You've written this Chinese character very nicely.
3. 很坏 hěn huài very bad
当心，这个人很 坏。
Dāngxīn, zhè ge rén hěn huài!
Look out! This person is no good.
4. 很多 hěnduō a lot of
你认识 很多 汉字。
Nǐ rènshi hěnduō Hànzì.
You recognize lots of characters.
5. 很近 hěn jìn very near
我家离 火车站 很近。
Wǒ jiā lí huǒchēzhàn hěn jìn.
I live quite near the train station.

The last stroke tapers off.

9 strokes

丶	ㄣ	彳	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	很				

怎

zěn how?

The character combines *suddenly* 乍 and *heart* 心 to suggest the idea of an *instantaneous flash in the heart*. Thus it means *how* or *why*.

Radical: 心 'heart'

Index # 76

Character components: 乍 + 心

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 怎 zěn why

你怎不早说呀?

Nǐ zěn bù zǎo shuō ya?

Why didn't you say so earlier?

2. 怎么 zěnmě how

这个词儿英语怎么说?

Zhè ge cí Yīngyǔ zěnmě shuō?

How do you say this word in English?

3. 怎样 zěnyàng how, what

这件事你怎样解释?

Zhè jiàn shì nǐ zěnyàng jiěshì?

How do you explain this matter?

4. 怎么样 zěnmeyàng what's it like?

最近怎么样, 忙吗?

Zuìjìn zěnmeyàng, máng ma?

How have things been recently? Busy?

The top horizontal stroke is longer.

9 strokes

ノ	ㄣ	个	乍	乍	乍	怎	怎	怎				

样

yàng appearance

樣

The full form consists of 3 parts: *wood* 木, *sheep* 羊, and *permanent* 永. It was the name of a type of soft wood, resembling oak. Thus the idea of *like manner*.

Radical: 木 'tree'

Index # 81

Character components: 木 + 羊

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 样 yàng appearance

几年没见面，他还是那个样。

Jǐ nián měi jiànmiàn, tā hái shì nà ge yàng.

It's years since I last saw him, but he still looks the same.

2. 怎么样 zěnmeyàng what's it like?

最近怎么样，忙吗？

Zuìjìn zěnmeyàng, máng ma?

How have things been recently? Busy?

3. 样子 yàngzi appearance

这件大衣的样子很好看。

Zhè jiàn dàyī de yàngzi hěn hǎokàn.

This coat is well cut.

4. 一样 yíyàng the same

他们兄弟相貌一样。

Tāmen xiōngdì xiàngmào yíyàng.

The brothers are alike in appearance.

5. 花样 huāyàng variety

这家服装店花样很多。

Zhè jiā fúzhuāngdiàn huāyàng hěnduō.

There is a great variety of styles in this boutique shop.

The last stroke of 木 should be written firmly.

10 strokes

一	十	才	木	术	术	术	术	样			

父

fù father

The character was a pictograph of the right hand holding a cane. From this it came to mean the head of a family or *father*.

Radical: 父 'father'

Index # 94

Character component: 父

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 父 fù father
以前 在 中国, 长兄 当 父。
Yìqián zài Zhōngguó, zhǎngxiōng dāng fù.
Formerly in China, the oldest brother assumed the authority of the father.
2. 父亲 fùqin father
我 父亲 对 中国 很 有 兴趣。
Wǒ fùqin duì Zhōngguó hěn yǒu xìngqù.
My father is very interested in China.
3. 父母 fùmǔ
下 个月 我 父母 要 去 旅行。
Xià ge yuè wǒ fùmǔ yào qù lǚxíng.
Next month my parents are going on a trip.
4. 祖父 zǔfù paternal grandfather
他的 祖父 去 世 了。
Tāde zǔfù qùshì le.
His paternal grandfather has passed away.
5. 继父 jìfù stepfather
他的 继父 对 他 不 错。
Tāde jìfù duì tā búcuò.
His stepfather is quite nice to him.

The last stroke tapers off.

4 strokes

丶	㇏	㇏	父										

亲 qīn kin

親

The full form contains 3 parts: *stand* 立, *tree* 木, and *see* 見. It signifies a person standing on a tree eager to see his *loved one*.

Radical: 立 'erect'

Index # 111

Character components: 立 + 木

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 亲 qīn close, intimate

我和姐姐最亲。

Wǒ hé jiějie zuì qīn.

I'm very close to my older sister.

2. 亲人 qīnrén kin

你在中国有 没有 亲人?

Nǐ zài Zhōngguó yǒu méiyǒu qīnrén?

Do you have any relatives in China?

3. 父亲 fùqin father

我父亲对 中国 很 有 兴趣。

Wǒ fùqin duì Zhōngguó hěn yǒu xìngqù.

My father is very interested in China.

4. 母亲 mǔqin mother

我母亲做的饭菜最好吃。

Wǒ mǔqin zuò de fāncài zuì hǎochī.

My mother cooks the best meals.

5. 亲戚 qīnqi relatives

我们两家是亲戚。

Wǒmen liǎng jiā shì qīnqi.

Our two families are related.

The middle horizontal stroke is the longest.

9 strokes

丶	一	二	三	立	𠂇	辛	亲	亲				

谢

xiè thank

謝

The full character combines *speech* 言 with *bowled body* 射. It suggests the idea that one should thank people with bowed body. It means *to thank*.

Radical: 讠 'word'

Index # 9

Character components: 讠 + 射

Character configuration:

--	--	--

Compounds, sentences and meanings

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>1. 谢 xiè thank
不用 谢。
Bùyòng xiè.
<i>Don't mention it. [literally, no need to thank]</i></p> <p>2. 谢谢 xièxiè thank
谢谢 你。
Xièxiè nǐ.
<i>Thank you.</i></p> <p>3. 多谢 duōxiè many thanks
多谢，再见！
Duōxiè, zàijiàn!
<i>Thanks a lot, good-bye!</i></p> | <p>4. 感谢 gǎnxiè thank
非常 感谢。
Fēicháng gǎnxiè.
<i>Many thanks.</i></p> <p>5. 谢天谢地 xiètiān-xièdì thank heavens
(literally, thank heaven and earth)
谢天谢地，没 发生 事故。
Xiètiān-xièdì, méi fāshēng shìgù.
<i>Thank goodness, there was no accident.</i></p> |
|---|--|

The ninth stroke is downward-left.

12 strokes

丶	讠	讠'	讠'	讠'	讠'	讠'	讠'	讠'	讠'	讠'	讠'	讠'

身

shēn body

The character is a pictograph depicting a man with a pot belly walking on his short legs. It means *body*.

Radical: 身 'body'

Index # 168

Character component: 身

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 身 shēn body, oneself

身在福中不知福。

Shēn zài fú zhōng bù zhī fú.

When you're happy you don't know it.

2. 身体 shēntǐ health

跳舞可以锻炼身体。

Tiàowǔ kěyǐ duànliàn shēntǐ.

Dancing can improve your physique.

3. 身上 shēnshang (carry something) on one

你身上有零钱吗?

Nǐ shēnshang yǒu língqián ma?

Have you got any change on you?

4. 身材 shēncái body line

王菲的身材苗条。

Wáng Fēi de shēncái miáotiáo.

Faye Wong has a slim figure.

5. 身高 shēn'gāo stature

王菲身高一点六五米。

Wáng Fēi shēn'gāo yídiǎnlǐu wǔ mǐ.

Faye Wong is 1.65 meters tall.

The third stroke ends with a hook.

7 strokes

丶	亻	冂	冂	冂	身	身						

体

tǐ body

體

The full form combines *bone* 骨 and the phonetic 豐 to suggest the idea of *body*. The simplified form uses *person* 亻 and *foundation* 本 to give the same meaning.

Radical: 亻 ‘upright person’

Index # 19

Character components: 亻 + 本

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 体 tǐ style of writing

你写的是 什么 体?

Nǐ xiě de shì shénme tǐ?

What style of calligraphy are you writing?

2. 身体 shēntǐ health

跳舞 可以 锻炼 身体。

Tiàowǔ kěyǐ duànliàn shēntǐ.

Dancing can improve your physique.

3. 体温 tǐwēn body temperature

你的 体温 是 39 度, 发烧 了。

Nǐde tǐwēn shì sānshíjiǔ dù, fāshāo le.

You have a fever, your temperature is 39 degrees.

4. 体力 tǐlì bodily strength

运动 能 增强 体力。

Yùndòng néng zēngqiáng tǐlì.

Sports can build up your strength.

5. 体贴 tǐtiē considerate

他 对 妻子 很 体贴。

Tā duì qīzi hěn tǐtiē.

He's very considerate to his wife.

The bottom horizontal stroke is shorter.

7 strokes

ノ	亻	仁	什	休	体								

都

dōu/dū all; city

The character combines *city* 邑 with *people* 者 to indicate a large *city* or *capital*. From the meaning of *general capital of all* 'dū' is evolved the idea of *all* with a different pronunciation: 'dōu'.

Radical: 邑 'right ear-lobe'

Index # 28

Character components: 者 + 邑

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 都 dōu all

大家都到了吗?

Dàjiā dōu dào le ma?

Is everybody here?

2. 都市 dūshì city

上海是一个大都市。

Shànghǎi shì yí ge dà dūshì.

Shanghai is a big city.

3. 首都 shǒudū capital city

北京是中国的首都。

Běijīng shì Zhōngguó de shǒudū.

Beijing is the capital of China.

The first stroke of 邑 looks like the figure 3.

10 strokes

一	十	土	𠂇	耂	者	者	者	都	都			

Quiz 8 (71–80)

A. Look at the 16-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally from left to right or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

Word or phrase				Pinyin	Meaning		
怎	很	都	谢	(i)	怎 样	zěnyàng	how
样	爸	身	这	(ii)			
父	母	体	家	(iii)			
语	亲	还	汉	(iv)			

B. CONVERT the following pinyin phrases into characters and check their English meaning in the Key. Some of the characters you need can be found in the 16-character grid above, the rest in the grid of the last character set.

(i)	Nǐ fùmǔ shēntǐ hǎo ma?									
(ii)	Tāmen dōu hěn hǎo, xièxie.									
(iii)	Nǐde Hànyǔ zěnmeyàng?									
(iv)	Hǎi hǎo, xièxie.									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)	怎么样	parents	(ii)	都 shì	health
	父母	variety		体 wēn	thank-you
	母语	appearance		体 lǐ	body temperature
	母的	what's it like?		身体	strength
	一样	female (animal)		身 cāi	capital
	huā 样	relatives		身 gāo	city
	亲 qī	mother tongue		谢谢	body height
	样 zi	same		shǒu 都	body shape

那

nā that

The character represented the state far in the west of Sichuan. Later it was borrowed to denote *thither*. It means *that*.

Radical: 阝 ‘right ear-lobe’

Index # 28

Character components: 月 + 阝

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 那 nā that
那是谁?
Nā shì shéi/shuí?
Who is that?
2. 那个 nā ge that one
那个孩子很可爱。
Nā ge háizi hěn kě'ài.
That child is cute.
3. 那么 nàme in that way
别走得那么快, 好不好?
Bié zǒude nàme kuài, hǎobuhǎo?
Don't walk so fast, okay?
4. 那边 nàbian over there
请把东西放在那边。
Qǐng bǎ dōngxi fāng zài nàbian.
Please put those things over there.
5. 从那儿起 cóng nàr qǐ since then
从那儿起, 他就用心念书了。
Cóng nàr qǐ, tā jiù yòngxīn niànshū le.
He's been studying hard since then.

The fifth stroke looks like the number 3.

6 strokes

了	刁	习	月	那	那							

里 lì inside

裡 / 裏

There are two full forms of this character: 裡 and 裏. Both forms combine *clothing* 衣 with *inside* 里 to suggest *lining* or *inside*. The simplified form uses only the latter component.

Radical: 里 'inside'

Index # 163

Character component: 里

Character configuration: ☐

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 里 lì inside
家里没 人。
Jiālǐ měi rén.
There is no one home.
2. 哪里 nǎlǐ where?
你 上 哪里去?
Nǐ shàng nǎlǐ qù?
Where are you going?
3. 这里 zhèlǐ here
我们 这里 的 东西 很 便宜。
Wǒmen zhèlǐ de dōngxi hěn piányi.
Our merchandise is inexpensive.
4. 里边 lǐbian inside
这 个 箱 子 里 边 有 什 么?
Zhè ge xiāngzi lǐbian yǒu shénme?
What's inside this box?
5. 里头 lǐtou inside
这 个 箱 子 里 头 有 什 么?
Zhè ge xiāngzi lǐtou yǒu shénme?
What's inside this box?

The bottom horizontal stroke is slightly longer.

7 strokes

丨	冂	𠔼	日	旦	里	里							

儿 ěr son

兒

The full form comes with a head and two eyes 兒. In simplification, only the lower part of the body 儿 is retained.

Radical: 儿 'son'

Index # 21

Character component: 儿

Character configuration: ☐

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 儿 ěr suffix (transcribed as r)

你去哪儿?

Nǐ qù nǎr?

Where are you going?

2. 儿子 érzi son

我的大儿子今年二十六岁了。

Wǒde dà érzi jīnnián èrshíliù suì le.

My eldest son is 26 this year.

3. 儿女 ěrnǚ sons and daughters

我的儿女都长大成人了。

Wǒde ěrnǚ dōu zhǎngdà chéng rén le.

My children have all grown up.

4. 儿歌 ěrgē children's song

今天我学了一首儿歌。

Jīntiān wǒ xuéle yī shǒu ěrgē.

I learnt a nursery rhyme today.

5. 儿童 ěrtóng children

这是儿童医院。

Zhè shì ěrtóng yīyuàn.

This is a children's hospital.

Note the difference between 儿 and 儿.

2 strokes

丿	儿											

女

nǚ female

The character was derived from the figure of a woman in a graceful pose. Thus the character came to mean *woman*.

Radical: 女 'female'

Index # 65

Character component: 女

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 女 nǚ female
中国的女运动员都很出色。
Zhōngguó de nǚ yùndòngyuán dōu hěn chūsè.
The female Chinese athletes are outstanding.
2. 女儿 nǚ'ér daughter
我女儿在上海教英语。
Wǒ nǚ'ér zài Shànghǎi jiāo Yīngyǔ.
My daughter teaches English in Shanghai.
3. 女强人 nǚqiāgrén a strong woman
现在女孩子喜欢当女强人。
Xiànzài nǚháizi xǐhuan dāng nǚqiāgrén.
These days girls want to be strong women.
4. 女生 nǚshēng female student
学语言的女生比男生多。
Xué yǔyán de nǚshēng bǐ nánshēng duō.
Female language students outnumber male students.
5. 妇女 fùnǚ woman
我母亲是家庭妇女。
Wǒ mǔqīn shì jiātīng fùnǚ.
My mother is a housewife.

End the first stroke firmly.

3 strokes

㇏	㇏	女											

男

nán male

The character combines *field* 田 with *strength* 力 to express the idea that *men* do the strenuous work in the rice fields.

Radical: 田 'field'
or 力 'strength'

Index # 119**Index # 31****Character components:** 田 + 力**Character configuration:****Compounds, sentences and meanings**

1. 男 nán man

我们 家里 男 女 平等。

Wǒmen jiālǐ nán nǚ píngděng.

In our household, we have equality of the sexes.

2. 男孩儿 nánhái boy

男孩儿 比较 淘气。

Nánhái bǐjiào táoqì.

Boys are more mischievous.

3. 男朋友 nǎnpéngyou boy friend

她 跟 男朋友 住 在一起。

Tā gēn nǎnpéngyou zhù zài yìqǐ.

She lives with her boy friend.

4. 男高音 nán'gāoyīn tenor

他的 声音 是 男 高音。

Tāde shēngyīn shì nán'gāoyīn.

He's a tenor.

5. 男厕所 nāncèsuǒ men's toilet

那边 有 男厕所。

Nàbiān yǒu nāncèsuǒ.

There's a men's toilet over there.

Finish the top component first.**7 strokes**

丨	冂	冂	田	田	男	男						

孩

hái child

The character combines *child* 子 with *cough* 亥 to suggest the presence of a *child* by the sound of coughing.

Radical: 子 ‘child’

Index # 67

Character components: 子 + 亥

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 孩 **hái** child (usually used with suffix *zi* or *ér*)
这个孩子很淘气。
Zhè ge háizi hěn táoqì.
This child is very naughty.
2. 男孩儿 **nánhái** boy
男孩儿比较淘气。
Nánhái bǐjiào táoqì.
Boys are more mischievous.
3. 女孩子 **nǚháizi** girl
这个女孩子很聪明。
Zhè ge nǚháizi hěn cōngmíng.
This girl is very clever.
4. 孩子气 **háiziqì** childish
你已经十六岁了,别那么孩子气!
Nǐ yǐjīng shíliù suì le, bié nàme háiziqì!
You shouldn't be so childish, you're 16 now!
5. 孩子话 **háizihuà** childish talk
你已经十六岁了,别说孩子话!
Nǐ yǐjīng shíliù suì le, bié shuō háizihuà!
You shouldn't talk like a child, you're 16 now!

The last stroke ends firmly.

9 strokes

㇀	了	子	孑	孖	孖	孩	孩	孩				

狗

gǒu dog

In this character, the animal radical 犭 combines with the phonetic 句 to give the idea of *dog*.

Radical: 犭 ‘animal’

Index # 58

Character components: 犭 + 句

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 狗 **gǒu** dog

我们家的狗是公的。

Wǒmen jiā de gǒu shì gōng de.

Our dog is a male.

2. 小狗 **xiǎogǒu** puppy

这只小狗真可爱。

Zhè zhī xiǎogǒu zhēn kě'ài.

This puppy is really cute.

3. 母狗 **mǔgǒu** female dog, bitch

这只母狗已经很老了。

Zhè zhī mǔgǒu yǐjīng hěn lǎo le.

This female dog is quite old.

4. 狗熊 **gǒuxióng** black bear

狗熊有时候吃人。

Gǒuxióng yǒu shíhòu chī rén.

Black bears sometimes eat people.

5. 狗屁 **gǒupì** rubbish (literally, dog's fart)

这篇文章写得狗屁不通。

Zhè piān wénzhāng xiěde gǒupì bùtōng.

The article is mere rubbish.

The second stroke finishes with a hook.

8 strokes

ノ	犭	犭	犭	犭	狗	狗	狗	狗					

猫

māo cat

貓

In the simplified form, the animal radical 犭 combines with the phonetic 苗 to give the idea of *cat*. The word *māo* sounds like a cat miawing. Note the full form uses a different radical which also means ‘animal’.

Radical: 犭 ‘animal’

Index # 58

Character components: 犭 + 苗

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 猫 māo cat

这只猫是公的。

Zhè zhī māo shì gōng de.

This is a tomcat.

2. 母猫 mǔmāo female cat

这母猫很老了。

Zhè mǔmāo hěn lǎo le.

This female cat is quite old.

3. 小猫 xiǎomāo kitten

这些小猫太可爱了!

Zhèxiē xiǎomāo tài kě'ài le!

These kittens are so cute!

4. 大熊猫 dàxióngmāo panda

我要去中国看大熊猫。

Wǒ yào qù Zhōngguó kàn dàxióngmāo.

I want to go to China to see the panda.

5. 猫头鹰 māotóuyīng owl

猫头鹰吃老鼠。

Māotóuyīng chī lǎoshǔ.

Owls eat rats.

The second stroke is a curving hook.

11 strokes

ノ	犭	犭	犭	犭	犭	犭	犭	猫	猫	猫	猫		

只

zhī [classifier]

隻

The full form combines *bird* 隹 and *again* 又 to represent the *classifier* for animals. In simplification, the phonetic 只 is used. See also zhǐ in character #200.

Radical: 口 ‘mouth’

Index # 50

or 八 ‘eight’

Index # 17

Character components: 口 + 八

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 只 zhī classifier

这只猫是公的。

Zhè zhī māo shì gōng de.

This is a tomcat.

两只老虎 **Liǎng zhī lǎohu** (“Two Tigers”) is a well-known children’s song.

两只老虎，两只老虎；

Liǎng zhī lǎohu, liǎng zhī lǎohu;

Two tigers, two tigers;

跑得快，跑得快；

Pǎode kuài, pǎode kuài;

They run fast, they run fast;

一只没有眼睛，

Yī zhī méiyǒu yǎnjīng,

One has no eyes,

一只没有尾巴；

Yī zhī méiyǒu wěiba;

One has no tail;

真奇怪！真奇怪！

Zhēn qíguài! Zhēn qíguài!

It’s really strange! It’s really strange!

The last stroke finishes firmly.

5 strokes

丶	㇀	口	尸	只									

Quiz 9 (81–90)

A. Look at the 16-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally from left to right or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

Word or phrase				Pinyin	Meaning
猫	女	哥	两	nánhái	boy
男	孩	那	有		
母	里	儿	没		
只	狗	子	家		

B. Refer to the characters in the 16-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin phrases into characters and check their English meaning in the Key.

(i)	Nǐ gēge yǒu méiyǒu háizi?									
(ii)	Wǒ gēge yǒu liǎng ge nǚ'ér.									
(iii)	Nǐ jiā yǒu méiyǒu gǒu?									
(iv)	Méiyǒu, wǒ jiā yǒu yì zhī māo.									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)	儿子	daughter	(ii)	母狗	here
	哪儿	strong woman		里 biān	female dog
	女儿	descendants		孩子 qì	men's toilet
	子 sūn	where		男 cèsuǒ	panda
	女 qiáng 人	son		xiǎo 猫	over there
	女 shēng	boy friend		那 biān	childish
	男孩儿	female student		这里	inside
	男朋友	boy		dàxióng 猫	kitten

大

dà big

The character depicts a person standing with arms outstretched, giving the idea of *big*.

Radical: 大 'big'

Index # 43

Character component: 大

Character configuration: 

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 大 dà big
把 收音机 开 大一点。
Bǎ shōuyīnjī kāi dàyidiǎn.
Turn the volume of the radio up a bit.
2. 大声 dàshēng loudly
请 别 大声 说话。
Qǐng bié dàshēng shuōhuà.
Please don't speak so loudly.
3. 大家 dàjiā everybody
请 大家 坐好。
Qǐng dàjiā zuòhǎo.
Please be seated, everyone.
4. 大小 dàxiǎo size (literally, big small)
这 双 鞋 大小 正 合适。
Zhè shuāng xié dàxiǎo zhèng héshì.
These shoes fit me perfectly.
5. 大概 dàgài in general
我 只 知道 个大概。
Wǒ zhǐ zhīdao ge dàgài.
I have only a general idea.

The last stroke tapers off.

3 strokes

一	ナ	大											

小

xiǎo small

The character represents a large object being divided into two *small* objects. It means *small*.

Radical: 小 ‘small’

Index # 49

Character component: 小

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 小 xiǎo little

我 比你 小。

Wǒ bǐ nǐ xiǎo.

I'm younger than you.

2. 小时 xiǎoshí hour

我 每天 工作 八个 小时。

Wǒ měitiān gōngzuò bā ge xiǎoshí.

I work eight hours every day.

3. 小时候 xiǎoshíhou in one's childhood

这是她 小时候 的 照片。

Zhè shì tā xiǎoshíhou de zhàopiàn.

These are her childhood photos.

4. 小吃 xiǎochī snacks

北京 的 小吃 很 出名。

Běijīng de xiǎochī hěn chūmíng.

Beijing is famous for its snacks.

5. 小心 xiǎoxīn be careful (literally, little heart)

过 马路 要 小心。

Guò mǎlù yào xiǎoxīn.

Be careful when crossing the road.

The middle stroke ends with a hook.

3 strokes

丿	小	小										

岁

suī age in years

Full form

歲

The simplified form combines *hill* 山 and *evening* 夕 to give the idea of *age in years*.

Radical: 山 'hill'

or 夕 'sunset'

Character components: 山 + 夕

Index # 53

Index # 56

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 岁 suī age in years

李 老师 今年 五十七 岁。

Lǐ lǎoshī jīnnián wǔshíqī suī.

Teacher Li is 57 years old.

2. 岁数 suìshù age (used in question)

您 今年 多 大 岁数 了?

Nín jīnnián duō dà suìshù le?

How old are you? [question directed at older people as sign of respect]

3. 年岁 niánsuì age

他 是 上 了 年 岁 的 人。

Tā shì shàngle niánsuì de rén.

He is a person who is getting on in years.

4. 岁月 suìyuè years

岁 月 不 居。

Suìyuè bù jū.

Time and tide wait for no one.

The dot is written last.

6 strokes

丶	山	山	夕	岁	岁								

比

bǐ compare

The character represents the figure of two persons standing side by side when comparing heights. It means *compare*.

Radical: 比 ‘compare’

Index # 86

Character components: 匕 + 匕

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 比 bǐ compare to
我 比 我 哥哥 小 两 岁。
Wǒ bǐ wǒ gēge xiǎo liǎng suì.
I'm 2 years younger than my brother.
2. 比较 bǐjiào comparatively
最近 我 比较 忙。
Zuìjìn wǒ bǐjiào máng.
I've been busy of late.
3. 比赛 bǐsài competition
今晚 有 一个 足球比赛, 你 看 吗?
Jīnwǎn yǒu yí ge zúqiú bǐsài, nǐ kàn ma?
Are you going to watch the soccer match tonight?
4. 比方 bǐfāng analogy
可以 给 我 打 个 比 方 吗?
Kěyǐ gěi wǒ dǎ ge bǐfāng ma?
Can you give me an example?
5. 比不上 bǐbùshàng not as good as
我的 汉语 比 不 上 他。
Wǒde Hànyǔ bǐbùshàng tā.
My Chinese is not as good as his.

The first stroke is a vertical lift.

4 strokes

㇏	㇏	㇏	比									

做

zuò do

The character combines *person* 亻 with *cause* 故 which signifies that a person causes something to happen by *doing* or *making*.

Radical: 亻 ‘upright person’

Index # 19

Character components: 亻 + 古 + 攴

Character configuration:

--	--	--	--

Compounds, sentences and meanings

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>1. 做 zuò do, make
这是你自己做的吗?
Zhè shì nǐ zìjǐ zuò de ma?
<i>Did you do/make this yourself?</i></p> <p>2. 做菜 zuòcài cook
她丈夫很会做菜。
Tā zhàngfu hěn huì zuòcài.
<i>Her husband is very good in cooking.</i></p> <p>3. 做事 zuòshì work
他做事做得很认真。
Tā zuòshì zuòde hěn rènzhēn.
<i>He does his work conscientiously.</i></p> | <p>4. 做生意 zuò shēngyì do business
我爸爸做生意的。
Wǒ bàba zuò shēngyì de.
<i>My father is a businessman.</i></p> <p>5. 做梦 zuòmèng dream
昨晚我做了一个可怕的梦。
Zuówǎn wǒ zuòle yí ge kěpà de mèng.
<i>I had a terrible dream last night.</i></p> |
|--|---|

The last stroke tapers off.

11 strokes

ノ	亻	亻	亻	亻	估	估	估	估	做	做		

工

gōng work

The character depicts an ancient carpenter's square from which the meaning of *work* was derived.

Radical: 工 'work'

Index # 39

Character component: 工

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 工 gōng work

假期的时候, 他去打工挣

Jiàqī de shíhòu, tā qù dǎgōng zhèng

零花钱。

líng huāqián.

During the holidays, he does menial work to earn some pocket money.

2. 工作 gōngzuò work

你做什么工作?

Nǐ zuò shénme gōngzuò?

What work do you do?

3. 工资 gōngzī wage or salary

一个月的工资有多少?

Yí ge yuè de gōngzī yǒu duōshao?

What's the monthly wage?

4. 工业 gōngyè industry

这里工业污染很严重。

Zhèlǐ gōngyè wūrǎn hěn yǎnzhòng.

Industrial pollution is quite serious here.

5. 工厂 gōngchǎng factory

这家工厂生产运动鞋。

Zhè jiā gōngchǎng shēngchǎn yùndòngxié.

This factory manufactures sport shoes.

The second horizontal stroke is slightly longer.

3 strokes

一	丁	工											

作

zuò do, make

The character combines *person* 亻 with 乍 which represents the idea of a cut being made by a person, and so means *to apply work to or make*.

Radical: 亻 ‘upright person’

Index # 19

Character components: 亻 + 乍

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 作 zuò work

这本小说是她的成名之作。

Zhè běn xiǎoshuō shì tāde chéngmíng zhī zuò.

This novel is the work that made her famous.

2. 作家 zuòjiā writer

我从小就想当作家。

Wǒ cóngxiǎo jiù xiǎng dāng zuòjiā.

I've wanted to be a writer since I was small.

3. 作文 zuòwén essay

这是一篇小学生的作文。

Zhè shì yī piān xiǎoxuéshēng de zuòwén.

This is an essay by a school child.

4. 作业 zuòyè assignment

今天的作业还没做呢。

Jīntiān de zuòyè hái méi zuò ne.

I haven't done today's assignment yet.

5. 作用 zuòyòng intention

他说那句话有什么作用?

Tā shuō nà jù huà yǒu shénme zuòyòng?

What was his intention in saying that?

The top horizontal is longer than those below it.

7 strokes

ノ	亻	亻	仂	仂	作	作								

医

yī cure, treat

醫

The simplified form takes the top left component of the full form as it is often the case in simplification.

Radical: 匚 ‘3-sided frame (open at the right)’ **Index # 13**

Character components: 匚 + 矢

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 医 yī cure, treat
中医 把他的 病 医好。
Zhōngyī bǎ tāde bìng yīhǎo.
The Chinese doctor cured him.
2. 医生 yīshēng doctor
他是 内科 医生, 不 做 手术。
Tā shì nèikē yīshēng, bú zuò shǒushù.
He's a physician, he does not operate.
3. 医务所 yīwùsuǒ clinic
今天 医务所 有 很多 人。
Jīntiān yīwùsuǒ yǒu hěnduō rén.
There are lots of people in the clinic today.
4. 医院 yīyuàn hospital
请问, 到 医院 怎么 走?
Qǐngwèn, dào yīyuàn zěnmě zǒu?
Excuse me, how do you get to the hospital?
5. 医科 yīkē medical courses in general
她 在 大学 念 医科。
Tā zài dàxué niàn yīkē.
She studies medicine at university.

The second stroke is made up of vertical and horizontal lines.

7 strokes

一	匚	匚	匚	匚	医	医						

生

shēng birth, life

The character depicts a *growing plant*.

Radical: 丿 'downward-left stroke'

Index # 4

Character component: 生

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 生 shēng give birth to
我 家 的 猫 生 了 三 只 小 猫。
Wǒ jiā de māo shēngle sān zhī xiǎomāo.
Our cat gave birth to three kittens.
2. 生日 shēngrì birthday
今 天 是 谁 的 生 日?
Jīntiān shì shéide shēngrì?
Whose birthday is it today?
3. 生词 shēngcí new word
我 今 天 学 了 五 个 生 词。
Wǒ jīntiān xuéle wǔ ge shēngcí.
I've learnt five new words today.
4. 大学生 dàxuéshēng university student
美 国 大 学 生 很 自 由。
Měiguó dàxuéshēng hěn zìyóu.
American students have a lot of freedom.
5. 生产 shēngchǎn manufacture
这 家 工 厂 生 产 运 动 鞋。
Zhè jiā gōngchǎng shēngchǎn yùndòngxié.
This factory manufactures sport shoes.

The bottom horizontal stroke is the longest.

5 strokes

ノ	ㄣ	ㄥ	牛	生									

忙

máng busy

The character combines *heart* 忄 with the phonetic 亡 to indicate the activities related to *being busy*.

Radical: 忄 ‘upright heart’

Index # 33

Character components: 忄 + 亡

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

- 忙 máng busy
我 最近 很 忙。
Wǒ zuìjìn hěn máng.
I've been very busy lately.
- 忙着 mángzhe busy with something
他 正 忙着 做饭 呢。
Tā zhèng mángzhe zuòfàn ne.
He's busying himself preparing the meal.
- 忙人 mángren busy person
他 是 个 大 忙人。
Tā shì ge dà mángren.
He's a very busy man.
- 忙碌 mánglù be busy
她 忙碌 了 一个 上午, 结果 把 饭菜 做好。
Tā mánglùle yí ge shàngwǔ, jiéguǒ bǎ fāncài zuòhǎo.
She was busy all morning, and eventually got the cooking done.
- 帮忙 bāngmáng help
他 来 找 人 帮忙。
Tā lái zhǎo rén bāngmáng.
He came for help.

The last stroke is a vertical bend.

6 strokes

丶	亅	忄	忄	忙	忙								

Quiz 10 (91–100)

A. Look at the 16-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

Word or phrase				Pinyin	Meaning		
狗	比	医	猫	(i)	大 小	dàxiǎo	size
大	小	生	学	(ii)			
工	岁	很	忙	(iii)			
作	女	里	男	(iv)			

B. Refer to the characters in the 16-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin phrases into characters and check the English meaning in the Key.

(i)	Nǐ jiějie zuò shénme gōngzuò?									
(ii)	Tāde gōngzuò máng bumáng?									
(iii)	Nǐ gēge bǐ nǐ dà jǐ suì?									
(iv)	Nǐ mèimei bǐ nǐ xiǎo jǐ suì?									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)		(ii)	
小 shǎo	age in years	工 zī	help
大 shēng	competition	生 cí	cook
岁 shù	hour	医生	do business
比 jiào	everybody	做 cài	wage/salary
比不上	compare	忙 bāng	new words
比 sài	puppy	做 shēngyì	university student
小狗	not as good as	工作	doctor
大 jiā	loudly	大学生	work

CHARACTER BUILDING 2 (51—100)

A. Memorize the following radicals and their English names. As a review exercise, write the pinyin spelling and meaning.

1. [一] 'horizontal stroke'
哥 () ; 两 () .
2. [丿] 'downward-left stroke'
生 () ; 九 () ;
么 () .
3. [讠] 'word'
谢 () ; 谁 () ;
语 () ; 说 () ;
认 () ; 识 () .
4. [八] 'eight'
八 () ; 弟 () .
5. [亻] 'upright person'
们 () ; 作 () ;
体 () ; 做 () .
6. [阝] 'right ear-lobe'
那 () ; 都 () ;
7. [氵] '3 drops of water'
没 () ; 汉 () ;
8. [宀] 'roof'
家 () ; 字 () ;
9. [辶] 'movement'
这 () ; 还 () ;
10. [小] 'small'
小 () ; 少 () ;
11. [口] 'mouth'
口 () ; 只 () ;
兄 () ; 名 () .
12. [犳] 'animal'
狗 () ; 猫 () .

13. [女] 'female'
女 () ; 妈 () ;
她 () ; 姐 () ;
妹 () .
14. [子] 'child'
子 () ; 学 () ;
孩 () .
15. [心] 'heart'
怎 () ; 您 () ;
16. [父] 'father'
父 () ; 爸 () .
17. [月] 'moon/flesh'
有 () ; 朋 () .

B. Write the pinyin and meaning against the characters classified under the following radicals.

- | | | | |
|---------|--|---|-----|
| 1. [乚] | 'horizontal bend hook' | 也 | () |
| 2. [匚] | 'three-sided frame
(open at the right)' | 医 | () |
| 3. [儿] | 'son' | 儿 | () |
| 4. [几] | 'how many' | 几 | () |
| 5. [力] | 'strength' | 男 | () |
| 6. [亡] | 'upright heart' | 忙 | () |
| 7. [工] | 'work' | 工 | () |
| 8. [巾] | 'napkin' | 师 | () |
| 9. [山] | 'hill' | 岁 | () |
| 10. [彳] | 'double upright person' | 很 | () |
| 11. [木] | 'tree' | 样 | () |
| 12. [比] | 'compare' | 比 | () |
| 13. [立] | 'erect' | 亲 | () |
| 14. [母] | 'mother' | 母 | () |
| 15. [老] | 'old' | 老 | () |
| 16. [身] | 'body' | 身 | () |
| 17. [里] | 'inside' | 里 | () |

C. Write the pinyin and meaning against the characters which share the following components. (Note that these components are not necessarily used as radicals.)

1. [子] 子 () ; 学 () ;
字 () ; 孩 () ;
好 () .
2. [儿] 儿 () ; 兄 () .
3. [也] 也 () ; 她 () .
他 () .

REVIEW 2 (51-100)

The following are words classified under parts of speech. Write the pinyin and meaning.

- Pronouns** 我们 () ; 我们的 () ;
你们 () ; 你们的 () ;
他们 () ; 他们的 () ;
她们 () ; 她们的 () .
- Demonstrative pronouns** 这 () ; 这些 () ;
这儿 () ; 这里 () ;
那 () ; 那些 () ;
那儿 () ; 那里 () .
- Interrogative pronouns** 谁的 () ; 哪儿 () ;
哪里 () ; 怎么 () ;
怎样 () ; 怎么样 () ;
几 () ; 几个 () .
- Nouns** 父亲 () ; 母亲 () ;
父母 () ; 哥哥 () ;
姐姐 () ; 弟弟 () ;
妹妹 () ; 兄弟 () ;
姐妹 () ; 家 () ;
国家 () ; 大家 () ;
人家 () ;
孩子 () ; 儿子 () ;
女儿 () ; 身体 () ;
老师 () ; 医生 () ;
学生 () ; 狗 () ;
猫 () ; 岁 () ;
工作 () .

Verbs	有 (_____) _____ ; 没有 (_____) _____ ; 谢 (_____) _____ ; 做 (_____) _____ ;
Adjectives	男 (_____) _____ ; 女 (_____) _____ ; 大 (_____) _____ ; 小 (_____) _____ ; 忙 (_____) _____ .
Adverbs	很 (_____) _____ ; 比 (_____) _____ .
Conjunctions	还 (_____) _____ ; 也 (_____) _____ ; 都 (_____) _____ .
Numbers	两 (_____) _____ .
Classifiers	口 (_____) _____ ; 只 (_____) _____ .
Noun phrases	中国人口 (_____) _____ ; 美国人口 (_____) _____ ; 英国人口 (_____) _____ ; 小学生 (_____) _____ ; 中学生 (_____) _____ ; 大学生 (_____) _____ ; 好学生 (_____) _____ . 好朋友 (_____) _____ ; 老朋友 (_____) _____ ; 男朋友 (_____) _____ . 女朋友 (_____) _____ .

WORD/SENTENCE PUZZLE 2

Find and CIRCLE words, phrases or sentences hidden in the puzzle. They can be found horizontally from left to right or vertically. The lines across and down are indicated by numbers. Write the meaning next to the pinyin. The first one is done for you.

ACROSS (left to right)

- 2. Nǐ yǒu jǐ ge xiōngdì jiěmèi?
- 5. Tā shuō Hànyǔ bǐ wǒ shuō de hǎo.
- 7. (i) búshì
- 7. (ii) liǎng ge gōngzuò
- 9. nánhǎi
- 10. hěnduō xiǎoxuésheng hé zhōngxuésheng
- 12. Zhè zhī gǒu hěn dà.
- 13. xiǎomāo

How many brothers and sisters do you have?

DOWN

1. Tā fùmǔ shēntǐ hěn hǎo.
3. Nǐ huì shuō Hànyǔ bù huì?
4. nǚxuéshēng
6. Wǒ yǒu liǎng zhī māo hé yì zhī gǒu.
8. èrdì
9. (i) nánshēng
9. (ii) dàxiǎo
10. xiǎomèi

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
1	名	哪	写	您	不	说	十	二	儿	小
2	们	谢	你	有	几	个	兄	弟	姐	妹
3	亲	妈	会	哪	七	医	里	多	吗	师
4	还	爸	说	是	会	字	我	名	语	么
5	他	说	汉	语	比	我	说	的	好	老
6	父	家	语	哥	忙	有	姓	学	妈	九
7	母	口	不	是	语	两	个	工	作	人
8	身	怎	会	英	多	只	少	汉	问	请
9	体	字	也	女	样	猫	名	这	男	孩
10	很	多	小	学	生	和	中	学	生	叫
11	好	识	写	生	您	一	多	吗	她	岁
12	认	那	友	少	这	只	狗	很	大	写
13	会	朋	我	名	都	狗	谁	他	小	猫

现

xiàn appear

現

The character combines *king* 王 and *see* 见 to suggest the idea that when the king appears everyone is *watching*.

Radical: 王 'king'
or 见 'see'

Character components: 王 + 见

Index # 79

Index # 93

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 现 xiàn appear
他 脸上 现出了 笑容。
Tā liǎnshang xiànchūle xiàoróng.
A smile appears on his face.
2. 现在 xiànzài now
现在 几点 了?
Xiànzài jǐ diǎn le?
What's the time now?
3. 现金 xiànjīn cash (literally, ready money)
你 可以 给 现金 吗?
Nǐ kěyǐ gěi xiànjīn ma?
Can you pay cash?
4. 现成 xiàchéng ready-made
定做 衣服 太 贵了, 买 现成 的吧。
Dìngzuò yīfu tài guì le, mǎi xiàchéng de ba.
It's too expensive to tailor-made clothes, let's buy ready-made ones.
5. 表现 biǎoxiàn behavior
他 今天 的 表现 很 好。
Tā jīntiān de biǎoxiàn hěn hǎo.
He's behaving very well today.

The last stroke is a vertical-bend hook.

8 strokes

一	二	千	王	玨	玨	玨	现					

在

zài at

The character signifies grass coming out of the *ground* 土. It came to mean *exist*.

Radical: 土 'earth'

Index # 40

Character components: 丿 + | + 土

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 在 **zài** at
你 住 在 哪里?
Nǐ zhù zài nǎlǐ?
Where do you live?
2. 在家 **zài jiā** at home
我 今 天 晚 上 不 在 家。
Wǒ jīntiān wǎnshang bù zài jiā.
I won't be home tonight.
3. 在内 **zàinèi** included
连 我 在 内 一 共 是 八 个 人。
Lián wǒ zàinèi yīgòng shì bā ge rén.
Including me, there are altogether eight people.
4. 在外 **zàiwài** excluded
这 是 饭 钱, 服 务 费 在 外。
Zhè shì fànqián, fúwùfèi zàiwài.
That's the price of the meal exclusive of service charge.
5. 实在 **shízài** really
我 实 在 不 知 道。
Wǒ shízài bù zhīdao.
I really don't know.

The bottom horizontal stroke is slightly longer.

6 strokes

一	丿	才	在	在	在							

点 diǎn dot

點

The four dots of fire in the left component, *black* 黑 of the full form 點, are moved over to the right component, *occupy* 占, to give the simplified form 点.

Radical: 灠 '4 dots of fire'

Index # 71

Character components: 占 + 灠

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>1. 点 diǎn a little
他今天好点了。
Tā jīntiān hǎo diǎn le.
<i>He's a bit better today.</i></p> <p>2. 五点零七分 wǔ diǎn líng qī fēn 5:07
现在五 点 零 七 分。
Xiānzài wǔ diǎn líng qī fēn.
<i>It's now seven minutes past five.</i></p> <p>3. 晚点 wǎndiǎn behind schedule
飞机晚点了。
Fēijī wǎndiǎn le.
<i>The plane is late.</i></p> | <p>4. 点菜 diǎncài choose dishes from a menu
可以点菜了。
Kěyǐ diǎncài le.
<i>We're ready to order now.</i></p> <p>5. 点头 diǎntóu nod one's head
他已经点头了。
Tā yǐjīng diǎntóu le.
<i>He's already ok'd it.</i></p> |
|--|--|

Note the way the dots are drawn.

9 strokes

丨	乚	㇀	占	占	点	点	点	点				

钟

zhōng clock

鐘

The full form represented the old idea of a bell made of *metal* 金 as big as a *boy* 童 which was used to tell time. The phonetic 中 is used in simplification.

Radical: 钅 ‘metal’

Index # 122

Character components: 钅 + 中

Character configuration:

--	--

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 钟 zhōng clock

送礼物 千万 不要 送 钟。

Sòng lǐwù qiānwàn bùyào sòng zhōng.

When buying a gift, be sure that it is not a clock.

(Note that the homonym of sòng zhōng is sòngzhōng ‘attend upon a dying person’.)

2. 点钟 diǎnzhōng o'clock

他 上午 十 点钟 来。

Tā shàngwǔ shí diǎnzhōng lái.

He's coming here at 10 a.m.

3. 一刻钟 yí kèzhōng 15 minutes, a quarter of an hour

我 等 了 一 刻钟。

Wǒ děngle yí kèzhōng.

I waited for a quarter of an hour.

4. 钟头 zhōngtóu hour

我 看了 三 个 钟头 电视。

Wǒ kànle sān ge zhōngtóu diànshì.

I've spent three hours watching television.

5. 钟情 zhōngqíng be deeply in love

他们 两 个 一 见 钟情。

Tāmen liǎng ge yí jiàn zhōngqíng.

They fell in love at first sight.

The fifth stroke is a vertical tick.

9 strokes

ノ	ㄣ	ㄥ	ㄣ	钅	钅	钅	钅	钟				

分

fēn divide

The character combines 八 *cut in two* and 刀 *knife* to give the meaning *divide*.

Radical: 八 'eight'

or 刀 'knife'

Character components: 八 + 刀

Index # 17

Index # 30

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 分 fēn divide

这药分三次吃。

Zhè yào fēn sān cì chī.

This medicine is to be taken in three separate doses.

2. 分钟 fēnzhōng minute

我五分钟就回来。

Wǒ wǔ fēnzhōng jiù huīlai.

I'll be back in five minutes.

3. 分别 fēnbié difference

有什么分别？

Yǒu shénme fēnbié?

What's the difference?

4. 分辨 fēnbiàn distinguish

很难分辨谁是谁非。

Hěn nán fēnbiàn shéi shì shéi fēi.

It's hard to tell who is right and who is wrong.

5. 百分之三十 bǎifēnzhīsānshí 30%

房租涨了百分之三十。

Fángzū zhǎngle bǎifēnzhīsānshí.

Rent has gone up 30 per cent.

Leave a gap between the top two strokes.

4 strokes

ノ	八	分	分										

了

le [particle]

The character is generally used after a verb to indicate the completion of an action. It is also used to indicate the emergence of a new situation.

Radical: 乚 'horizontal bend'

Index # 5

Character component: 了

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 了 le (new situation).

现在 几点 了?

Xiànzài jǐ diǎn le?

What's the time now?

2. 了 le (new situation)

下雨 了。

Xià yǔ le.

It's starting to rain.

3. 了 le (completed action).

我 学 了 一 百 二 十 个 汉 字。

Wǒ xué le yībǎi-èrshí ge Hànzì.

I've learnt 120 Chinese characters.

The last stroke ends with a hook.

2 strokes

乚 了



bàn half

The character depicted a cow 𠂇 being split 丿 in half. It suggests dividing goods and generally means *a half*.

Radical: 八 'eight'

or 十 'ten'

Character component: 半

Index # 17

Index # 11

Character configuration: 

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 半 bàn half

从 这里 去 要 半 (个) 小时。

Cóng zhèlǐ qù yào bàn (ge) xiǎoshí.

It'll take half an hour from here.

2. 一半 yībàn half

这 箱 桔子 有 一半 坏了。

Zhè xiāng júzi yǒu yībàn huàile.

Half of this box of oranges is rotten.

3. 一倍半 yībèibàn 150%

这 里 的 房价 十 年 内 增加 了 一 倍 半。

Zhèlǐ de fángjià shí nián nèi zēngjiāle yībèibàn.

Property values have increased one and a half times over the last ten years.

4. 半新不旧 bànxīn-bùjiù showing signs of wear (literally, no longer new)

他 穿 着 一 身 半 新 不 旧 的 衣 服。

Tā chuānzhe yī shēn bànxīn-bùjiù de yīfu.

The clothes he was wearing, though not shabby, were far from new.

5. 半天 bàntiān a long time (literally, half the day)

我 们 谈 了 半 天 也 没 结 果。

Wǒmen tánle bàntiān yě méi jiéguǒ.

We discussed the matter for a long time but did not come to any conclusion.

The bottom horizontal stroke is longer.

5 strokes

丶	丿	㇏	㇏	半									

吃

chī eat

The character combines *mouth* 口 and *beg* 乞 to suggest the result of soliciting food. It means *to eat*.

Radical: 口 ‘mouth’

Index # 50

Character components: 口 + 乞

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 吃 chī eat
我 每天 都 吃 个 苹果。
Wǒ měitiān dōu chī ge píngguǒ.
I eat an apple every day.
2. 吃饭 chīfàn have a meal
我们 什么 时候 吃饭?
Wǒmen shénme shíhòu chīfàn?
When do we eat?
3. 吃得下 chīdexià be able to eat
我 吃得下 两 碗 饭。
Wǒ chīdexià liǎng wǎn fàn.
I can eat two bowls of rice.
4. 吃不下 chībuxià not able to eat
我 吃不下 两 碗 饭。
Wǒ chībuxià liǎng wǎn fàn.
I can't eat two bowls of rice.
5. 吃苦 chīkǔ bear hardships (literally, eat bitterness)
他 小时候 吃了 不少 苦。
Tā xiǎoshíhòu chīle bùshǎo kǔ.
He suffered a great deal in his childhood.

The last stroke is a horizontal-bend-hook.

6 strokes

1	口	口	𠂆	𠂆	吃								

早

zǎo early

The character depicted the *sun* 日 shining on the grass early in the morning. From this, it came to mean *early*.

Radical: 日 'sun'

Index # 90

Character components: 日 + 十

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 早 zǎo early

我早知道了。

Wǒ zǎo zhīdao le.

I knew that long ago.

2. 早饭 zǎofàn breakfast

我早饭吃点儿水果。

Wǒ zǎofàn chī diǎnr shuǐguǒ.

I eat fruit for my breakfast.

3. 早上 zǎoshang morning

早上好!

Zǎoshang hǎo!

Good morning!

4. 早晨 zǎochén early morning

早晨空气清新。

Zǎochén kōngqì qīngxīn.

The air is fresh early in the morning.

5. 早日 zǎorì at an early date

祝你早日恢复健康。

Zhù nǐ zǎorì huīfù jiànkāng.

I hope you'll get well soon.

The bottom horizontal stroke is longer.

6 strokes

丨	冂	日	旦	早									

饭

fān meal

飯

The character combines *eat* 食 and the phonetic 反 to give the meaning of *cooked rice* or *meal*.

Radical: 食 'food'

Index # 59



Character components: 食 + 反

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 饭 fān meal
饭前洗手。
Fān qián xǐshǒu.
Wash your hands before meals.
2. 饭菜 fāncài food
这个饭馆的饭菜做得不错。
Zhè ge fānguǎn de fāncài zuòde búcuò.
The food in this restaurant is quite good.
3. 饭馆儿 fānguǎnr restaurant
学校对面有一家饭馆儿。
Xuéxiào duìmiàn yǒu yī jiā fānguǎnr.
There's a restaurant opposite the school.
4. 饭店 fàndiàn hotel
我住在北京饭店。
Wǒ zhù zài Běijīng Fàndiàn.
I'm staying at Beijing Hotel.
5. 米饭 mǐfàn boiled rice
我平常吃两碗米饭。
Wǒ píngcháng chī liǎng wǎn mǐfàn.
I usually eat two bowls of rice.

The second stroke is a horizontal hook.

7 strokes

ノ	㇏	𠂆	𠂇	𠂈	𠂉	饭						

Quiz 11 (101–110)

A. Look at the 16-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

Word or phrase				Pinyin	Meaning
工	忙	作	吃	(i) 现 在	xiànzài now
少	多	了	早	(ii)	
现	在	分	饭	(iii)	
几	点	钟	半	(iv)	

B. Refer to the characters in the 16-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin phrases into characters and check their English meaning in the Key.

(i)	Xiànzài jǐ diǎnzhōng le?									
(ii)	Xiànzài liùdiǎnbàn le.									
(iii)	Nǐmen jǐ diǎn chī zǎofān?									
(iv)	Wǒmen qīdiǎnbàn chī zǎofān.									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)

现 jīn

biǎo 现

分钟

一 kè 钟

两点钟

钟 tōu

在家

分 biē

minute

quarter hour

cash

behavior

hour

2 o'clock

difference

at home

(ii)

一半

半 tiān

吃苦

吃不下

早 chēn

饭 guǎnr

饭 cài

mǐ 饭

half

early morning

food

bear hardship

boiled rice

a long time

unable to eat

restaurant

时

shí time

時

The full form combines *sun* 日 with *temple* 寺 to represent a place where people used to keep track of *time*. In simplification *inch* 寸 replaces 寺 to give the idea of *an inch of the sun*.

Radical: 日 'sun'

Index # 90

Character components: 日 + 寸

Character configuration:

--	--

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 时 shí time

大夫 说 要 按时 吃药。

Dàifu shuō yào ànshí chīyào.

The doctor said to take the medicine at the right time.

2. 时间 shíjiān time

没有 时间 了, 我们 得 走了。

Méiyǒu shíjiān le, wǒmen děi zǒu le.

There's no time, we must be going.

3. 时候 shíhou time

现在 什么 时候 了?

Xiànzài shénme shíhou le?

What's the time now?

4. 时机 shíjī opportunity

他 在 等待 时机。

Tā zài děngdài shíjī.

He is waiting for an opportunity.

5. 时髦 shímáo fashionable

她 喜欢 穿 时髦 的 服装。

Tā xǐhuan chuān shímáo de fúzhuāng.

She likes to wear fashionable clothes.

The last stroke ends with a hook.

7 strokes

丨	丩	日	日	𠂆	时	时						

候

hòu time; wait

The character combines *person* 亻, *vertical stroke* 丨 and *expect* 矣 to suggest an expectant atmosphere in which something is about to happen.

Radical: 亻 ‘upright person’

Index # 19

Character components: 亻 + 丨 + 矣

Character configuration:

--	--

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 候 hòu wait

请 稍 候 一会儿。

Qǐng shāo hòu yíhuìr.

Please wait a moment.

2. 时候 shíhou time

现在 什么 时候 了?

Xiānzài shénme shíhou le?

What's the time now?

3. 有时候 yǒu shíhou sometimes

我 有 时候 去 看 电影。

Wǒ yǒu shíhou qù kàn diànyǐng.

Sometimes I go to see a movie.

4. 气候 qìhòu climate

他不 适应 这里的 气候。

Tā bù shìyīng zhèlǐ de qìhòu.

He's not used to the climate here.

5. 问候 wèn hòu give regards to

请 代 我 问候 你 父母。

Qǐng dài wǒ wèn hòu nǐ fùmǔ.

Please send my regards to your parents.

Remember to write the third stroke.

10 strokes

ノ	亻	亻	亻	亻	亻	亻	亻	候	候			

上

shàng above; go up

The bottom line represents the surface while the strokes above indicate something *above* the surface.

Radical: 一 'horizontal stroke'

Index # 2

Character component: 上

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 上 shàng most recent, last

上 星期三 我 有 事儿。

Shàng Xīngqīsān wǒ yǒu shìr.

I was busy last Wednesday.

2. 上 shàng go to

你 上 哪儿去?

Nǐ shàng nǎr qù?

Where are you going?

3. 上面 shàngmian above

书 上面 有 我的 名字。

Shū shàngmiàn yǒu wǒde míngzi.

My name is written on the book.

4. 上午 shàngwǔ a.m.

今天 上午 风 很大。

Jīntiān shàngwǔ fēng hěn dà.

It's quite windy this morning.

5. 上学 shàngxué go to school

小孩 已经 五 岁了, 该 上学 了。

Xiǎohái yǐjīng wǔ suì le, gāi shàngxué le.

The child is already five, she/he should be going to school.

The top horizontal stroke is shorter.

3 strokes

丨	丿	上											

下

xià below

The bottom line represents the surface while the strokes below indicate something *below* the surface.

Radical: 一 ‘horizontal stroke’

Index # 2

Character component: 下

Character configuration: ☐

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 下 xià next

下 星期三 我 有事儿。

Xià Xīngqīsān wǒ yǒu shìr.

I'll be busy next Wednesday.

2. 下面 xiàmiàn below

图表 下面 有 说明。

Túbiǎo xiàmiàn yǒu shuōmíng.

There are captions below the chart.

3. 下班 xiàbān get off work

你 今天 几点 下班?

Nǐ jīntiān jǐ diǎn xiàbān?

When will you be finishing work today?

4. 下午 xiàwǔ afternoon

下午 有 雷阵雨。

Xiàwǔ yǒu léizhènyǔ.

There'll be thunderstorms in the afternoon.

5. 下雨 xiàyǔ rain

外面 下雨。

Wàimian xiàyǔ.

It's raining outside.

End the last stroke firmly.

3 strokes

一	下	下											

午

wǔ noon

The character combines the component 丿 and the character 十 which indicates *center* to give the idea that when the sun is right in the center, it's *noon*.

Radical: 丿 'downward-left stroke'

Index # 4

Character components: 丿 + 干

Character configuration: 

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 午 wǔ noon
午 前 就是 中午 一点 之前。
Wǔ qián jiùshì zhōngwǔ yīdiǎn zhīqián.
Forenoon is before 1:00 p.m.
2. 中午 zhōngwǔ noon
我 跟 他 约好 中午 见面。
Wǒ gēn tā yuēhǎo zhōngwǔ jiànmiàn.
I've arranged to meet with him at noon.
3. 午饭 wǔfàn lunch
今天 午饭 吃 什么?
Jīntiān wǔfàn chī shénme?
What's for lunch today?
4. 午睡 wǔshuì afternoon nap
中国人 有 午睡 的 习惯。
Zhōngguó rén yǒu wǔshuì de xíguàn.
Chinese people have a habit of taking an afternoon nap.
5. 午间 wǔjiān afternoon (adjective)
现在 播送 的是 午间 新闻。
Xiànzài bōsòng de shì wǔjiān xīnwén.
We are now broadcasting the afternoon news.

The bottom horizontal stroke is longer.

4 strokes

丿	ㄣ	ㄣ	午										

晚

wǎn late, evening

The character combines *sun* 日 and *exempt* 免 to suggest that when one is free from the scorching sun, it is *evening*. By extension, it gives the idea of *late*.

Radical: 日 'sun'

Index # 90

Character components: 日 + 免

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 晚 wǎn late

现在 去 还 不 晚。

Xiānzài qù hái bù wǎn.

It's still not too late to go.

2. 晚上 wǎnshang evening

今天 晚上 我 请客。

Jīntiān wǎnshang wǒ qǐngkè.

I'm buying dinner tonight.

3. 晚饭 wǎnfàn evening meal

今天 晚饭 很 丰盛。

Jīntiān wǎnfàn hěn fēngshèng.

Tonight's dinner is sumptuous.

4. 晚班 wǎnbān evening shift

这个 工作 需要 上 晚班。

Zhè ge gōngzuò xūyào shàng wǎnbān.

This job involves working night shifts.

5. 晚点 wǎndiǎn behind schedule (train/bus/ plane/ferry)

飞机 晚点 了。

Fēijī wǎndiǎn le.

The plane is late.

The last stroke is a vertical-bend-hook.

12 strokes

丨	丩	日	日	日'	𠄎	𠄎	𠄎	𠄎	𠄎	𠄎	𠄎	𠄎

起

qǐ rise

The character combines *walk* 走 and the phonetic 己 to suggest the action of *rising*.

Radical: 走 ‘walk’

Index # 156

Character components: 走 + 己

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 起 qǐ get out of bed
早睡 早起 对身体好。
Zǎo-shuì zǎo-qǐ duì shēntǐ hǎo.
Early to bed and early to rise is good for the health.
2. 起床 qǐchuáng get out of bed
今天我 六点半 起床。
Jīntiān wǒ liùdiǎnbàn qǐchuáng.
I got up at 6:30 today.
3. 起动 qǐdòng start
汽车 起动, 请 抓好 扶手。
Qīchē qǐdòng, qǐng zhuāhǎo fúshǒu.
The bus is starting, please hold on to the handrail.
4. 起码 qǐmǎ at least
这个 工作 起码 要 三个月 才能 完成。
Zhè ge gōngzuò qǐmǎ yào sān ge yuè cái néng wánchéng.
This job will take at least three months.
5. 一起 yìqǐ together
跟 我 一起 去 看 电影 吧。
Gēn wǒ yìqǐ qù kàn diànyǐng ba.
Let's see a movie together.

The last stroke is a vertical-bend-hook.

10 strokes

一	十	土	丰	丰	丰	走	起	起	起			

床

chuáng bed

The character signifies something made of *wood* 木 and is placed under the roof of a big house 广. Thus, it means *bed*.

Radical: 广 'broad'

or 木 'tree'

Character components: 广 + 木

Index # 36

Index # 81

Character configuration: 

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 床 chūáng bed

房间里放着两张床。

Fángjiān lǐ fāngzhe liǎng zhāng chuáng.

There are two beds in the room.

2. 床上 chūángshang in bed

我喜欢躺在床上看书。

Wǒ xǐhuan tǎng zài chuángshang kànshū.

I like to read in bed.

3. 床单 chūángdān bed sheet

该换床单了。

Gāi huàn chuángdān le.

The bedsheets need changing.

4. 单人床 dānrénchuáng single bed

我觉得单人床太窄。

Wǒ juéde dānrénchuáng tài zhǎi.

I find that single beds are too narrow for me.

5. 双人床 shuāngrénchuáng double bed

我喜欢睡双人床。

Wǒ xǐhuan shuì shuāngrénchuáng.

I like to sleep on a double bed.

The last stroke tapers off.

7 strokes

丶	㇇	广	户	庀	庌	床						

跑

pǎo run

The character combines *foot* 足 and the phonetic 包 to suggest the action of *running*.

Radical: 足 'foot'

Index # 164

Character components: 足 + 包

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 跑 pǎo run
她 跑得 很 快。
Tā pǎode hěn kuài.
She can run very fast.
2. 跑步 pǎobù jogging
他 每天 早晨 都 跑步。
Tā měitiān zǎochēn dōu pǎobù.
He jogs every morning.
3. 跑道 pǎodào runway
飞机 正在 跑道 上 行驶。
Fēijī zhèngzài pǎodào shàng xíngshǐ.
The plane is taxiing on the runway.
4. 赛跑 sàipǎo race
他 经常 参加 长距离 赛跑。
Tā jīngcháng cānjiā chángjùlí sàipǎo.
He often takes part in long-distance races.
5. 长跑 chángpǎo long-distance running
我 参加了 五千 米 的 长跑。
Wǒ cānjiāle wǔqiān mǐ de chángpǎo.
I took part in a 5000 meter race.

The seventh stroke is a tick.

12 strokes

丶	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏

步

bù step

The character can be thought of as *foot* 止 and *few* 少, indicating the distance of one walking stride. Note that the lower part of the character 少 loses the right dot.

Radical: 止 'stop'

Index # 88

Character components: 止 + 少

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 步 bù step

只有几步路了。

Zhǐyǒu jǐ bù lù le.

It's only a few steps away.

2. 步骤 bùzhōu step, stage

她有步骤地进行工作。

Tā yǒu bùzhōu de jìnxíng gōngzuò.

She carries out the work systematically.

3. 脚步 jiǎobù footstep

走路时请放轻脚步。

Zǒulù shí qǐng fàng qīng jiǎobù.

Please walk softly.

4. 进步 jìnbù make progress

你写汉字很有进步。

Nǐ xiě Hànzì hěn yǒu jìnbù.

You are making great progress in your Chinese character writing.

5. 止步 zhǐbù out of bounds

游人止步。

Yóurén zhǐbù

No visitors.

The last stroke sweeps down to left.

7 strokes

丨	乚	止	止	止	止	止						

Quiz 12 (111–120)

A. Look at the 16-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

Word or phrase				Pinyin	Meaning
起	时	跑	步	qǐchuāng	get out of bed
床	晚	上	早		
工	现	午	下		
在	候	里	分		

B. Refer to the characters in the 16-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin phrases into characters and check their English meaning in the Key.

(i)	Nǐ shénme shíhou qǐchuāng?									
(ii)	Wǒ qīdiǎnzhōng qǐchuāng.									
(iii)	Nǐ pǎo bu pǎobù?									
(iv)	Pǎo, yǒu shíhou pǎo.									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)	时 jiān	timetable	(ii)	下 yǔ	improve
	时 kèbiǎo	climate		下 bān	evening meal
	什么时候	time		jìn 步	go to school
	qì 候	what time		午 shuì	race
	有时候	lunch		上学	together
	上午	afternoon		sài 跑	raining
	下午	a.m.		晚饭	finish work
	午饭	sometimes		一起	afternoon nap

jīn present

The top part of the character suggests convergence from three directions and the lower part suggests everlasting. It came to mean *present time*.

Radical: 人 'person'

Index # 18

Character components: 人 + 丶 + 冫

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 今 jīn now, the present
他说从今以后要认真学习。
Tā shuō cóng jīn yǐhòu yào rènzhēn xuéxí.
He said he will study conscientiously from now on.
2. 今天 jīntiān today
今天会下雨吗?
Jīntiān huì xià yǔ ma?
Will it rain today?
3. 今晚 jīnwǎn tonight
我今晚不在家。
Wǒ jīnwǎn bù zài jiā.
I won't be home tonight.
4. 今年 jīnnián this year
我今年刚开始学中文。
Wǒ jīnnián gāng kāishǐ xué Zhōngwén.
I just started learning Chinese this year.
5. 今后 jīnhòu from now on
希望我们今后能多交流
经验。
Xīwàng wǒmen jīnhòu néng duō jiāoliú jīngyàn.
I hope we can have more exchange of experiences from now on.

今 is easily confused with 令.

4 strokes

ノ	人	亼	今										

天

tiān day, sky

The character combines the characters 一 and 大 to suggest something very big and above the head of people — *the sky*.

Radical: 一 ‘horizontal stroke’

or 大 ‘big’

Character components: 一 + 大

Index # 2

Index # 43

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 天 tiān day

天不早了。

Tiān bù zǎo le.

It's getting late.

2. 天才 tiāncái genius

这孩子有音乐天才。

Zhè háizi yǒu yīnyuè tiāncái.

This child has musical talent.

3. 天气 tiānqì weather

今天天气真好。

Jīntiān tiānqì zhēn hǎo.

The weather is really good today.

4. 天然 tiānrán nature

我喜欢天然景色。

Wǒ xǐhuan tiānrán jǐngsè.

I like natural scenery.

5. 天真 tiānzhēn innocent, naive

你要相信这样的话，那就太

Nǐ yào xiāngxìn zhèyàng de huà, nà jiù tài

天真了。

tiānzhēn le.

If you believe that sort of talk, you're really naive.

The third stroke does not protrude over the top horizontal stroke.

4 strokes

一	二	𠂇	天									

明

míng bright

The character combines *sun* 日 and *moon* 月 to express the idea of *brightness*.

Radical: 日 'day'

Index # 90

Character components: 日 + 月

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 明 míng bright, clear

你 有 没 有 问 明 他 的 来 意?

Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu wèn míng tā de lái yì?

Have you specifically asked him his reasons for coming?

2. 明白 míngbai understand

我 不 明 白 你 的 意 思。

Wǒ bù míngbai nǐ de yì si.

I don't understand what you mean.

3. 明天 míngtiān tomorrow

对 不 起 我 明 天 没 有 空 儿。

Duì bu qǐ, wǒ míngtiān méiyǒu kòng er.

Sorry, I'll be busy tomorrow.

4. 明显 míngxiǎn obvious

这 很 明 显 是 一 个 借 口。

Zhè hěn míngxiǎn shì yí ge jiè kǒu.

This is evidently a pretext.

5. 明知 míngzhī know perfectly well

你 明 知 他 不 高 兴, 为 什 么 还 要

Nǐ míngzhī tā bù gāo xìng, wèi shén me hái yào

说。

shuō.

You know quite well that he won't be happy to hear this, so why do you still say it?

The last stroke ends with a hook.

8 strokes

丨	丩	月	日	明	明	明						

月

yuè month

The character is a pictograph which represents the crescent *moon*.

Radical: 月 ‘moon/flesh’

Index # 103

Character component: 月

Character configuration: 

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 月 yuè month

我的 月 收入 是 五 千 元。

Wǒde yuè shōurù shì wǔ qiān yuán.

My monthly income is ¥5000.

2. 这个月 zhè ge yuè this month

这个 月 我 比较 忙。

Zhè ge yuè wǒ bǐjiào máng.

I'm quite busy this month.

3. 上个月 shàng ge yuè last month

我们 上 个 月 去 旅行 了。

Wǒmen shàng ge yuè qù lǚxíng le.

We went for a holiday last month.

4. 下个月 xià ge yuè next month

我们 下 个 月 就 放假 了。

Wǒmen xià ge yuè jiù fàngjià le.

We'll be on holiday next month.

5. 月亮 yuèliang moon

今晚 的 月亮 很 圆。

Jīnwǎn de yuèliang hěn yuán.

The moon is round tonight.

The last stroke ends with a hook.

4 strokes

丿	月	月	月										

日

rì day

The character is a pictograph which represents the shape of the *sun*.

Radical: 日 'sun'

Index # 90

Character component: 日

Character configuration: ☐

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 日 rì day

十月二十五日是 我的 生日。

Shíyuè-èrshíwǔrì shì wǒde shēngrì.

October 25th is my birthday.

2. 日期 rìqī date

你 忘了 填上 你的 出生 日期。

Nǐ wàngle tiánshàng nǐde chūshēng rìqī.

You forgot to fill in your date of birth.

3. 日记 rìjì diary

我 没有 记日记的习惯。

Wǒ méiyǒu jì rìjì de xíguàn.

I don't have a habit of keeping a diary.

4. 日常 rìcháng daily

这些 都是 日常 必须 用 的 东西。

Zhèxiē dōu shì rìcháng bìxū yòng de dōngxi.

These are all the daily needs.

5. 日本 Rìběn Japan

你 去过 日本 没有?

Nǐ qùguo Rìběn méiyǒu?

Have you been to Japan?

The sealing stroke is written last.

4 strokes

丨	冂	月	日										

年

nián year

The character combines the idea of *rice plant* 禾 and *person bent over* 人, to represent the *yearly* harvest.

Radical: 丿 'downward-left stroke'

Index # 4

Character component: 年

Character configuration: 

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 年 nián year

你是哪年去美国的?

Nǐ shì nǎ nián qù Měiguó de?

Which year did you go to America?

2. 去年 qùnián last year

我是去年开始学跳舞的。

Wǒ shì qùnián kāishǐ xué tiàowǔ de.

I started learning to dance last year.

3. 年纪 niánjī age

你多大年纪了?

Nǐ duō dà niánjī le?

How old are you?

4. 年轻 niánqīng young

这位教授看起来很年轻。

Zhè wèi jiàoshòu kànqilai hěn niánqīng.

This professor looks quite young.

5. 拜年 bàinián pay a New Year visit

去朋友家拜年最好别忘了带

Qù péngyou jiā bàinián zuìhǎo bié wàngle dài

礼物。

lǐwù.

When paying New Year visits to friends,
don't forget to bring along some gifts.

The lowest horizontal stroke is the longest.

6 strokes

ノ	ㄣ	ㄥ	ㄨ	ㄣ	年							

空

kōng/kòng empty; leisure time

The character combines *hole* 穴 and *work* 工 to suggest a room which encloses space. From this came the meaning of *emptiness*. By extension, it means *sky*.

Radical: 穴 'cave'

Index # 110

Character components: 穴 + 工

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 空 kōng empty

屋里是空的,一个人也没有。

Wūli shì kōng de, yí ge rén yě méiyǒu.

The room is empty; there's no one there.

2. 空气 kōngqì air

城里空气污染很严重。

Chéngli kōngqì wūrǎn hěn yánzhòng.

Air pollution is very serious in the city.

3. 空调 kōngtiáo air conditioning

进来,外面很热,屋里有空调。

Jìnlai, wàimian hěn rè, wūli yǒu kōngtiáo.

Come in, it's hot outside, there's air conditioning inside the room.

4. 空儿 kōngr free time

今天下午我有空儿。

Jīntiān xiàwǔ wǒ yǒu kōngr.

I'm free this afternoon.

5. 空闲 kōngxián leisure time

等你空闲的时候,我们

Děng nǐ kōngxián de shíhòu, wǒmen

聊聊天。

liáoliàotiān.

The next time when you're free, let's chat.

The bottom horizontal stroke is longer.

8 strokes

丶	㇀	㇀	㇀	㇀	空	空	空					

看

kàn see, watch

The character expresses the idea of putting *hand* 手 above *eyes* 目 in order to *see* clearly.

Radical: 目 'eyes'

Index # 118

Character components: 手 + 目

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 看 **kàn** see, look at

你对这件事怎么看?

Nǐ duì zhè jiàn shì zěnmē kàn?

What's your view on this matter?

2. 看电影 **kàn diànyǐng** see a movie

今晚我去看电影。

Jīnwǎn wǒ qù kàn diànyǐng.

I'm going to see a movie tonight.

3. 看书 **kànshū** read books

我喜欢看书。

Wǒ xǐhuan kànshū.

I like to read.

4. 看见 **kànjiàn** see

我今天在车站看见她。

Wǒ jīntiān zài chēzhàn kànjiàn tā.

I saw her at the bus stop today.

5. 看来 **kànlái** it seems

看来他还没拿定主意。

Kànlái tā hái méi náding zhǔyi.

It looks as if he hasn't made up his mind.

The first stroke travels from right to left.

9 strokes

一	二	三	𠂇	𠂇	看	看	看	看				

电

diàn electricity

電

The character depicted a flash of *lightning*. The full form has *rain* 雨 on top to indicate that rain and lightning come together. From lightning *electricity* is derived.

Radical: 乚 ‘vertical-bend-hook’

Index # 5

Character components: 日 + 乚

Character configuration: ☐

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 电 diàn electricity

电门 有 毛病, 电了 我一下。

Diànmén yǒu máobīng, diànle wǒ yíxià.

There was something wrong with the switch and I got a shock.

2. 电影 diànyǐng movie

我 喜欢 看 中国 电影。

Wǒ xǐhuan kàn Zhōngguó diànyǐng.

I like to see Chinese movies.

3. 电视 diànshì television

今晚 电视 有 什么 好 节目?

Jīnwǎn diànshì yǒu shénme hǎo jiémù?

Are there any good programs on TV tonight?

4. 电脑 diànnǎo computer

现在 电脑 在 中国 很 普及。

Xiànzài diànnǎo zài Zhōngguó hěn pǔjí.

Computers are now common in China.

5. 电话 diànhuà telephone

今晚 请 给 我 回 个 电话。

Jīnwǎn qǐng gěi wǒ huí ge diànhuà.

Please give me a call tonight.

The horizontal lines are equally spaced.

5 strokes

丨	冂	𠃍	日	电								

影

yǐng shadow

The character combines *sun* 日, *feathery* 彡 and the phonetic 京 to give the meaning of *shadow*.

Radical: 彡 'feathery'

Index # 55

Character components: 日 + 京 + 彡

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 影 yǐng shadow

听说 他是 回来了,可是 还 没 看见
Tīngshuō tā shì huílai le, kěshì hái méi kànjiàn
他的影儿。

tāde yǐngr.

*I heard that he's back, but I haven't seen any
sign of him yet.*

2. 影迷 yǐngmí movie fan

他 喜欢 看 电影, 是个 影迷。

Tā xǐhuan kàn diànyǐng, shì ge yǐngmí.

He's fond of movies, he's a movie fan.

3. 影印 yǐngyìn photocopy

请 给 我 影印 两 份。

Qǐng gěi wǒ yǐngyìn liǎng fēn.

Please photocopy two copies for me.

4. 影响 yǐngxiǎng influence, effect

吸烟 影响 健康。

Xīyān yǐngxiǎng jiànkāng.

Smoking affects health.

5. 合影 héyǐng take a photo together

我们 照 个 合影 留念, 好 吗?

Wǒmen zhào ge héyǐng liúniàn, hǎo ma?

*Let's take a photo together to mark the
occasion, shall we?*

The last three strokes slant downward, then left.

15 strokes

丶	冂	𠃍	𠃍	𠃍	旦	旱	𠃍	𠃍	𠃍	𠃍	𠃍	𠃍
影	影											

Quiz 13 (121–130)

- A. Look at the 16-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

Word or phrase				Pinyin	Meaning
日	今	晚	吃	jīnwǎn	tonight
明	天	月	看		
有	空	儿	电		
做	作	生	影		

- B. Refer to the characters in the 16-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin phrases into characters and check their English meaning in the Key.

(i)	Jīntiān shì Jiǔyuè-shíwǔrì.									
(ii)	Míngtiān shì wǒde shēngrì.									
(iii)	Jīnwǎn nǐ yǒu kòngr ma?									
(iv)	Wǒmen kàn diànyǐng zěnmeyàng?									

- C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)

qù 年
天 cǎi
天 qì
明 bai
明 xiǎn
日 qī
日 jī
下个月

understand
date
obvious
talent
diary
weather
next month
last year

(ii)

年 qīng
空 qì
空 tiáo
看 shū
看 jiàn
电 nǎo
电 shì
影 yìn

read
television
computer
young
air
photocopy
air-conditioning
see

昨

zuó yesterday

The character combines *sun* 日 and the phonetic 乍 to suggest the meaning of *yesterday*.

Radical: 日 'sun'

Index # 90

Character components: 日 + 乍

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 昨天 zuótiān yesterday
他 昨天 才 来过。
Tā zuótiān cái lái guo.
He came only yesterday.
2. 昨天的 zuótiān de yesterday's
这 是 昨天 的 报。
Zhè shì zuótiān de bào.
This is yesterday's newspaper.
3. 昨日 zuórì yesterday
他 昨日 才 来过。
Tā zuórì cái lái guo.
He came only yesterday.
4. 昨晚 zuówǎn last night
昨晚 雨 下得 很 大, 你 知道 吗?
Zuówǎn yǔ xiàde hěn dà, nǐ zhīdao ma?
It rained heavily last night, did you know?
5. 昨夜 zuóyè last night
昨夜 雨 下得 很 大, 你 知道 吗?
Zuóyè yǔ xiàde hěn dà, nǐ zhīdao ma?
It rained heavily last night, did you know?

The top horizontal stroke is longer than those below it.

9 strokes

丨	丩	日	日	日'	𠂆	𠂆	昨	昨				

去

qù go

The character is the figure of a rice-container with a lid. Since the container becomes empty after the rice has been eaten, the character came to mean *to be gone*.

Radical: 厶 ‘private’

or 土 ‘earth’

Character components: 土 + 厶

Index # 23

Index # 40

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>1. 去 qù go
假期你到哪儿去玩儿?
Jiàqī nǐ dào nǎr qù wǎnr?
<i>Where are you going during the holidays?</i></p> <p>2. 去处 qùchù place to go
这是一个风景优美的去处。
Zhè shì yí ge fēngjǐng yōuměi de qùchù.
<i>This is a scenic place to visit.</i></p> <p>3. 去世 qùshì (of grown-ups) die
我父亲三年前去世了。
Wǒ fùqin sān nián qiǎn qùshì le.
<i>My father passed away three years ago.</i></p> | <p>4. 去年 qùnián last year
我是去年开始学跳舞的。
Wǒ shì qùnián kāishǐ xué tiàowǔ de.
<i>I started learning to dance last year.</i></p> <p>5. 拿去 nǎqù take away
谁把我的字典拿去了?
Shéi bǎ wǒde zìdiǎn nǎqù le?
<i>Who's taken my dictionary?</i></p> |
|---|---|

The second horizontal stroke is longer.

5 strokes

一	十	土	去	去								

星

xīng star

The character combines *sun* 日 and *seedling* 生, a reference to emerging light. This then took on the meaning of *star*.

Radical: 日 'sun'

Index # 90

Character components: 日 + 生

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 星 xīng star
今晚 月 明 星 稀。
Jīnwǎn yuè míng xīng xī.
The moon is bright and the stars are sparse tonight.
2. 星期 xīngqī week
今天 星期几?
Jīntiān xīngqījǐ?
What day of the week is it today?
3. 这个星期 zhè ge xīngqī this week
这个 星期 工作 比较 轻松。
Zhè ge xīngqī gōngzuò bǐjiào qīngsōng.
The workload is easy this week.
4. 上星期 shàng xīngqī last week
上 星期 我 度假 去了。
Shàng xīngqī wǒ dùjià qù le.
Last week I was on holiday.
5. 下星期 xià xīngqī next week
下 星期 我 比较 忙。
Xià xīngqī wǒ bǐjiào máng.
I'll be rather busy next week.

The *sun* component 日 should be written squarish.

9 strokes

丶	冂	𠃍	日	尸	旦	旦	星	星				

期

qī period of time

The character combines *month* 月 and the phonetic 其 to suggest *a period of time*.

Radical: 月 ‘moon/flesh’

or 其 ‘secondly’

Character components: 其 + 月

Index # 103

Index # 171

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 期 qī period

第一期 工程 已经 完成 了。

Dìyī qī gōngchéng yǐjīng wánchéng le.

The first phase of the project has been completed.

2. 期间 qījiān course

他在 住院 期间 看了 很多 小说。

Tā zài zhùyuàn qījiān kànle hěnduō xiǎoshuō.

While in hospital, he read many novels.

3. 假期 jiàqī holiday

假期你 有 什么 计划?

Jiàqī nǐ yǒu shénme jìhuà?

What plans do you have for your holidays?

4. 学期 xuéqī semester

这 个 学期 功课 比较 轻松。

Zhè ge xuéqī gōngkè bǐjiào qīngsōng.

There's not much work this semester.

5. 到期 dàoqī expire

我的 签证 下 个月 到期。

Wǒde qiānzhèng xià ge yuè dàoqī.

My visa expires next month.

The third last stroke ends with a hook.

12 strokes

一	十	廿	卅	卌	其	其	其	其	期	期	期	

每

měi every

The character combines *hairpin* 丷 and *mother* 母 to give the idea of bearing children repeatedly. It came to mean *every*.

Radical: 母 'mother'

Index # 108

Character components: 丷 + 母

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

- 每 měi every, each
每 到 北 京, 我 总 要 去 逛 一 下
Měi dào Běijīng, wǒ zǒng yào qù guān yíxià
长 城。
Chángchéng.
Every time I am in Beijing, I have to visit the Great Wall.
- 每每 měiměi often
他 们 常 在 一 起, 每 每 一 谈 就 是
Tāmen cháng zài yìqǐ, měiměi yì tán jiù shì
半 天。
bàntiān.
They often get together, and when they did, they'd talk for hours.
- 每天 měitiān everyday
我 母 亲 每 天 都 去 散 步。
Wǒ mǔqīn měitiān dōu qù sǎnbù.
My mother goes for a walk every day.
- 每年 měinián every year
我 每 年 都 去 旅 行。
Wǒ měinián dōu qù lǚxíng.
I go for a trip every year.
- 每个星期 měi ge xīngqī every week
她 每 个 星 期 都 请 客。
Tā měi ge xīngqī dōu qǐngkè.
She entertains guests every week.

每 can be confused with 母.

7 strokes

丷	母	仁	每	每	每								

进

jìn enter

進

The full form combines *movement* 辶 and *bird* 隹 to suggest rapid advance like a bird flying. It means *progress*.

Radical: 辶 ‘movement’

Index # 38

Character components: 辶 + 井

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 进 jìn enter
请进!
Qǐng jìn!
Please come in!
2. 进来 jīnlai enter
让他进来。
Ràng tā jīnlai.
Let him come in.
3. 进步 jìnbù make progress
你写汉字很有进步。
Nǐ xiě Hànzì hěn yǒu jìnbù.
You are making great progress in your Chinese character writing.
4. 进出口 jìnchūkǒu import & export
她在一家进出口公司工作。
Tā zài yì jiā jìnchūkǒu gōngsī gōngzuò.
She works in an import and export company.
5. 进行 jìnxíng be in progress
工作进行得怎么样?
Gōngzuò jìnxíngde zěnmeyàng?
How are you getting on with your work?

The left vertical stroke slants to the left.

7 strokes

一	二	卅	井	讲	进								

城

chéng city

The character combines *soil* 土 and the phonetic 成 to suggest the ancient idea of a walled city. It means *city*.

Radical: 土 'earth'

Index # 40

Character components: 土 + 成

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 城 chéng city
城里的商店比较高档。
Chéngli de shāngdiàn bǐjiào gāodǎng.
The shops in the city sell better quality goods.
2. 城乡 chéngxiāng town and country
在中国，城乡的差别很大。
Zài Zhōngguó, chéngxiāng de chābié hěn dà.
There is quite a large difference between urban and rural areas in China.
3. 城市 chéngshì city
上海是中国最大的城市。
Shànghǎi shì Zhōngguó zuìdàde chéngshì.
Shanghai is the largest city in China.
4. 进城 jìnchéng go to the city
我坐地铁进城。
Wǒ zuò dìtiě jìnchéng.
I take the subway to get to the city.
5. 长城 Chángchéng Great Wall of China
我终于登上了长城。
Wǒ zhōngyú dēngshàngle Chángchéng.
I finally climbed the Great Wall of China.

The third stroke slants upward.

9 strokes

一	十	土	圡	圢	圣	城	城	城				

买

mǎi buy

買

The full form combines *net* 𦉳 and *shells* 貝. Since shells were used for money, netting lots of shells meant being able to *buy* things.

Radical: 一 ‘horizontal-hook’

Index # 5

Character components: 一 + 头

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 买 mǎi buy
我 买了 〈汉英 词典〉。
Wǒ mǎile Hànyīng Cídiǎn.
I've bought the Chinese-English Dictionary.
2. 买得起 mǎideqǐ can afford
两百 元 不太贵, 我 买得起。
Liǎngbǎi yuán bù tài guì, wǒ mǎideqǐ.
¥200 is not too much to pay, I can afford it.
3. 买不起 mǎibuqǐ can't afford
五百 元 太 贵了, 我 买不起。
Wǔbǎi yuán tài guì le, wǒ mǎibuqǐ.
¥500 is too much, I can't afford it.
4. 买卖 mǎimài business (literally, buying and selling)
我 父亲 是 做 买卖 的。
Wǒ fùqin shì zuò mǎimài de.
My father is a businessman.
5. 买不到 mǎibudào out of stock
这 种 皮包 现在 买不到 了。
Zhè zhǒng píbāo xiànzài mǎibudào le.
You can't buy this kind of briefcase now.

End the last stroke firmly.

6 strokes

一	ㄣ	ㄣ	ㄣ	买	买								

东

dōng east

東

The full form combines *tree* 木 and *sun* 日 to represent the morning sun rising in the *east* behind some tree branches.

Radical: 一 ‘horizontal stroke’

Index # 2

Character components: 一 + 丿 + 小

Character configuration: ☐

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 东 dōng east
我 住 在 城 东。
Wǒ zhù zài chéng dōng.
I live in the eastern part of the city.
2. 东边 dōngbian east
太阳 从 东边 升起来。
Tàiyáng cóng dōngbian shēngqilai.
The sun rises in the east.
3. 东南亚 Dōngnányà South-East Asia
东南亚 有 很多 华人。
Dōngnányà yǒu hěnduō Huárén.
There are many Chinese in South-East Asia.
4. 东西 dōngxi thing (literally, east west)
她 买 东西 去了。
Tā mǎi dōngxi qù le.
She's out shopping.
5. 房东 fāngdōng landlord
他 是 我的 房东。
Tā shì wǒ de fāngdōng.
He is my landlord.

The second stroke is a downward-left bend.

5 strokes

一	乚	𠂇	东	东								

西

xī west

The pictograph of a bird in a nest. A bird returns to its nest when the sun sets in the *west*.

Radical: 西 'west'

Index # 139

Character component: 西

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 西 xī west

夕阳 西下。

Xīyáng xī xià.

The sun sets in the west.

2. 西方 Xīfāng the West

澳大利亚是 西方 国家。

Àodàliyà shì Xīfāng guójiā.

Australia is a Western country.

3. 西餐 Xīcān Western food

你 喜欢 吃 中餐 还是 西餐?

Nǐ xǐhuan chī Zhōngcān háishi Xīcān?

Do you prefer Chinese or Western food?

4. 西药 Xīyào Western medicine

在 中国 哪里可以 买到 西药?

Zài Zhōngguó nǎlǐ kěyǐ mǎidào Xīyào?

Where can one buy Western medicine in China?

5. 西式 Xīshì Western style

西式 快餐 在 北京 很 流行。

Xīshì kuàicān zài Běijīng hěn liúxíng.

Western style fast food is very popular in Beijing.

The inside right stroke bends.

6 strokes

一	乚	冂	𠃍	西	西								

Quiz 14 (131–140)

A. Look at the 16-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

				Word or phrase	Pinyin	Meaning
星	每	都	做	(i) 星 期	xīngqī	week
期	昨	晚	买	(ii)		
了	去	天	东	(iii)		
进	城	里	西	(iv)		

B. Refer to the characters in the 16-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin phrases into characters and check their English meaning in the Key.

(i)	Zuótiān wǒ jìnjíng le.								
(ii)	Nǐ jìnjíng zuò shénme le?								
(iii)	Wǒ qù mǎi dōngxī le.								
(iv)	Měi Xīngqīliù wǒ dōu jìnjíng.								

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)	jià 期	in progress	(ii)	买不起	thing
	去 chù	holiday		买卖	Western meal
	dào 期	go to the city		东 nányà	can't afford
	进 lái	city		东 bian	business
	进步	expire		东西	Western-style
	进 xīng	come in		西 fāng	east side
	进城	place to go		西 cān	South-East Asia
	城 shì	improvement		西 shì	the West

商

shāng commerce

The first two strokes of the character make up the radical while the rest is made up of two dots, the 3-sided frame and what goes inside it. The character looks like the face of a *merchant*.

Radical: 亠 'top of 六'

Index # 6

Character components: 亠 + 冫 + 冫 + 冫 + 冫

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 商 shāng commerce
中国 正在 发展 工商 企业。
Zhōngguó zhèngzài fāzhǎn gōngshāng qīyè.
China is developing its industrial and commercial enterprises.
2. 商人 shāngrén merchant
现在 中国 商人 的 地位 提高了。
Xiànzài Zhōngguó shāngrén de dìwèi tígāo le.
Nowadays the status of merchants in China is higher.
3. 商店 shāngdiàn shop
商店 几点 开门?
Shāngdiàn jǐ diǎn kāimén?
What time does the shop open?
4. 商业 shāngyè commerce
上海 是一个 商业 城市。
Shànghǎi shì yí ge shāngyè chéngshì.
Shanghai is a commercial city.
5. 商量 shāngliang discuss
我 有事儿要 跟你 商量。
Wǒ yǒu shìr yào gēn nǐ shāngliang.
I have something to discuss with you.

The sixth stroke ends with a hook.

11 strokes

丶	一	亠	亠	产	商	商	商	商	商	商		

店

diàn shop

The character combines *broad* 广 and *arrange* 占 to suggest a place where objects are arranged and sold, i.e. a *shop*.

Radical: 广 'broad'

Index # 36

Character components: 广 + 占

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 店 diàn shop
他开了一个 什么 店?
Tā kāile yí ge shénme diàn?
What shop did he run?
2. 书店 shūdiàn bookshop
书店里 有 很多 人。
Shūdiàn lǐ yǒu hěnduō rén.
There are lots of people in the bookshop.
3. 文具店 wénjùdiàn stationery shop
附近 有 没有 文具店?
Fùjìn yǒu méiyǒu wénjùdiàn?
Is there a stationery shop nearby?
4. 服装店 fúzhuāngdiàn boutique
这 家 服装店 的 衣服 很 特别。
Zhè jiā fúzhuāngdiàn de yīfu hěn tèbié.
The clothes in this boutique are quite special.
5. 店员 diànyuán shop assistant
店员 的 服务 态度 很 热情。
Diànyuán de fúwù tàidu hěn rèqíng.
The shop assistants are very friendly.

占 can be confused with 古 .

8 strokes

丶	㇀	广	庀	庀	庀	店	店					

毛

máo hair

The character represents an animal's furry tail held upright. It means *hair*.

Radical: 毛 'hair'

Index # 97

Character component: 毛

Character configuration: 

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 毛 máo hair

这猫长得一身好毛。

Zhè māo zhǎngde yī shēn hǎo máo.

This cat has a fine coat of fur.

2. 毛衣 máoyī woolen sweater

今天比较冷，要穿毛衣。

Jīntiān bǐjiào lěng, yào chuān máoyī.

Today is quite cold, you need to wear a sweater.

3. 毛笔 máobǐ writing brush

我会用毛笔写字。

Wǒ huì yòng máobǐ xiě zì.

I can write with a brush.

4. 毛病 máobìng problem

复印机有点毛病。

Fùyīnjī yǒu diǎn máobìng.

There's something wrong with the photocopier.

5. 一毛(钱) yī máo (qián) ten cents

报纸一块五毛(钱)一份。

Bàozhǐ yíkuài-wǔmáo (qián) yī fēn.

The newspaper is \$1.50 a copy.

Note the difference between 毛 and 手.

4 strokes

一	二	三	毛										

衣

yī clothes

The character represents the figure of putting the neckbands together and means *garment*..

Radical: 衣 'clothes'

Index # 132

Character components: 亠 + 衣

Character configuration: 

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 衣 yī clothing

老百姓 最 关心 的是 衣食住行。

Lǎobǎixīng zuì guānxīn de shì yī-shí-zhù-xíng.

Ordinary people are mainly concerned with clothing, food, shelter and transportation — the basic necessities of life.

2. 毛衣 máoyī woolen sweater

今天 比较 冷, 要 穿 毛衣。

Jīntiān bǐjiào lěng, yào chuān máoyī.

Today is quite cold, you need to wear a sweater.

3. 衣服 yīfu clothes

外边 冷, 多 穿 些衣服。

Wàibiān lěng, duō chuān xiē yīfu.

It's cold outside. Put on more clothes.

4. 衣料 yīliào material for clothing

这 种 衣料 适合 做 裙子。

Zhè zhǒng yīliào shìhé zuò qúnzi.

This type of material is suitable for making skirts.

5. 衣架 yījià coat hanger

这里 有 没有 衣架?

Zhèlǐ yǒu méiyǒu yījià?

Are there any clothes hangers here?

The last stroke tapers off.

6 strokes

丶	亠	𠂇	𠂆	衣	衣								

件

jiàn [classifier]; document

The character combines *person* 亻 and *cattle* 牛 to suggest a person counting cattle. It refers to a *unit in counting*.

Radical: 亻 ‘upright person’

Index # 19

Character components: 亻 + 牛

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 件 jiàn classifier
这件衣服很好看。
Zhè jiàn yīfu hěn hǎokàn.
This garment is very pretty.
2. 软件 ruǎnjiàn software
这是盗版软件，我不要。
Zhè shì dàobǎn ruǎnjiàn, wǒ bù yào.
This is a pirated software, I don't want it.
3. 零件 língjiàn part
新的零件太贵了，买二手的吧。
Xīn de língjiàn tài guì le, mǎi èrshǒu de ba.
New parts are too expensive, what if we buy second-hand ones?
4. 配件 pèijiàn fittings
我们需要买管子配件。
Wǒmen xūyào mǎi guǎnzi pèijiàn.
We need to buy plumbing fittings.
5. 文件 wénjiàn document
请把文件放好，别丢失了。
Qǐng bǎ wénjiàn fānghǎo, bié diūshī le.
Please put the document in a safe place, don't lose it.

The second horizontal stroke is longer.

6 strokes

ノ	亻	亻	亻	仁	仁	件							

钱

qián money

錢

The character combines *metal* 钅 and the phonetic 戔 to suggest the concept of *money*.

Radical: 钅 'metal'

Index # 122

Character components: 钅 + 戔

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 钱 qián money

你一个月的工资多少钱?

Nǐ yí ge yuè de gōngzī duōshao qián?

What's your monthly wage?

2. 钱包 qiánbāo wallet, purse

他的钱包被贼抢了。

Tāde qiánbāo bèi zéi qiǎng le.

His wallet was snatched by a thief.

3. 有钱 yǒuqián wealthy

她父母很有钱。

Tā fùmǔ hěn yǒuqián.

Her parents are very wealthy.

4. 零钱 língqián small change

我要换点零钱。

Wǒ yào huàn diǎn língqián.

I want to get some small change.

5. 压岁钱 yāsuìqián money given to children during the Lunar New Year

中国小孩过年都可以拿到

Zhōngguó xiǎohái guònián dōu kěyǐ ná dào

很多压岁钱。

hěnduō yāsuìqián.

Chinese children get quite a bit of gift money during the Lunar New Year.

The last stroke appears at the top right corner.

10 strokes

ノ	ㄣ	ㄥ	ㄨ	钅	钅	钅	钱	钱	钱			

百

bǎi hundred

The character combines *one* 一 and *white* 白. It is believed that 白 once meant *hundred*, adding *one* 一 made it *one hundred*.

Radical: 一 'horizontal stroke'

or 白 'white'

Character components: 一 + 白

Index # 2

Index # 147

Character configuration: 

Compounds, sentences and meanings

- 百 bǎi hundred
我 认识 两百 个字。
Wǒ rènshi liǎngbǎi ge zì.
I know 200 characters.
- 百分之百 bǎifēnzhībǎi absolutely (literally, 100%)
这是 百分之百 的 谎话!
Zhè shì bǎifēnzhībǎi de huǎnghuà!
That's an absolute lie!
- 百分点 bǎifēndiǎn 1% point
银行 利息 增加了 半个 百分点。
Yínháng lìxī zēngjiāle bàn ge bǎifēndiǎn.
Bank interest has increased by half a percentage point.
- 百货 bǎihuò general merchandise
这 是一家 高档 的 百货 公司。
Zhè shì yì jiā gāodǎng de bǎihuò gōngsī.
This is an up-market department store.
- 百万 bǎiwàn million (literally, a hundred ten thousands)
她 想 嫁 给 百万 富翁。
Tā xiǎng jià gěi bǎiwàn fùwēng.
She wants to marry a millionaire.

The top horizontal stroke is longer.

6 strokes

一	丄	丅	百	百	百							

块

kuài classifier

塊

The character combines *earth* 土 and the phonetic 夬 to suggest the idea of a *lump* or *piece*. The full form uses a different phonetic.

Radical: 土 'earth'

Index # 40

Character components: 土 + 夬

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 块 kuài piece
她吃了两块面包。
Tā chīle liǎng kuài miànbāo.
She ate two pieces of bread.
2. 鱼块 yúkuài fish pieces
我要了一个糖醋鱼块。
Wǒ yào le yí ge tángcù yúkuài.
I've ordered a plate of sweet and sour fish.
3. 一块钱 yí kuài qián a dollar (literally, a piece of money)
她一个月的工资五百块钱。
Tā yí ge yuè de gōngzī wǔbǎi kuài qián.
Her monthly wage is 500 dollars.
4. 一块儿 yíkuàir together
你有兴趣跟我们一块儿去吗?
Nǐ yǒu xìngqù gēn wǒmen yíkuàir qù ma?
Would you be interested in coming along with us?
5. 方块字 fāngkuàizì square characters
汉字是方块字, 很难记。
Hànzì shì fāngkuàizì, hěn nán jì.
Chinese characters are square-shaped characters, so they are hard to remember.

The last stroke tapers off.

7 strokes

一	十	土	扌	扌	块	块						

便

biàn/piǎn convenient; cheap

The character combines *person* 亻 and the phonetic 更 to give two meanings: *convenient* and *cheap*. By itself, it is used as an adverb in much the same way as *jiù* 就.

Radical: 亻 ‘upright person’

Index # 19

Character components: 亻 + 更

Character configuration:

--	--

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 便 biàn then
这几天 不是 刮风, 便 是 下雨。
Zhè jǐ tiān bú shì guāfēng, biàn shì xià yǔ.
During the last few days, if it was not windy, then it was raining.
2. 方便 fāngbiàn convenient
什么 时候 方便, 什么 时候 来。
Shénme shíhòu fāngbiàn, shénme shíhòu lái.
Drop in whenever it's convenient.
3. 便利 biànlì convenient
这里 交通 便利。
Zhèlǐ jiāotōng biànlì.
Transport is convenient here.
4. 便条 biàntiáo short note
你 给他 写 个 便条 吧。
Nǐ gěi tā xiě ge biàntiáo ba.
Why don't you write him a note?
5. 便宜 piányi cheap
这里的 东西 价钱 很 便宜。
Zhèlǐ de dōngxi jiàqián hěn piányi.
The things here are really inexpensive.

The second last stroke starts under the horizontal stroke.

9 strokes

ノ	亻	亻	亻	亻	亻	亻	便	便				

宜

yí appropriate

The character combines *roof* 宀 and the phonetic 且 to suggest the meaning of *appropriate*.
When combined with 便 it is pronounced in the neutral tone.

Radical: 宀 'roof'

Index # 34

Character components: 宀 + 且

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 宜 yí appropriate

老幼 咸宜。

Lǎoyòu xiányí.

Suitable for both young and old.

2. 不宜 bùyí not fitting

对 孩子 不宜 要求 过 高。

Duì háizi bùyí yāoqiú guò gāo.

You shouldn't ask too much of a child.

3. 宜人 yírén pleasant

这里 气候 宜人。

Zhèlǐ qìhòu yírén.

The weather's pleasant here.

4. 便宜 piányi inexpensive

这里的 东西 价钱 很 便宜。

Zhèlǐ de dōngxi jiàqián hěn piányi.

The things here are really inexpensive.

5. 适宜 shìyí appropriate

游泳 对 老年人 很 适宜。

Yóuyóǒng duì lǎoniánrén hěn shìyí.

Swimming is good for old people.

The last horizontal stroke is longer.

8 strokes

丶	㇀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宜					

Quiz 15 (141–150)

- A. Look at the 16-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

				Word or phrase	Pinyin	Meaning	
一	百	城	进	一	百	yībǎi	one hundred
钱	商	便	宜				
件	店	块	毛				
西	东	生	衣				

- B. Refer to the characters in the 16-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin phrases into characters and check their English meaning in the Key.

(i)	Chénglǐ shāngdiàn dōngxì guì ma?									
(ii)	Zhè jiàn máoyī hěn piányi.									
(iii)	Liǎngbǎi kuài qián yí jiàn, guì ma?									
(iv)	Wǒ mǎi liǎng jiàn, piányi diǎnr.									

- C. Match the Chinese words with English meaning.

(i)

文 jù 店
文件
shū 店
衣 fu
毛 bǐ
毛衣
五毛 qián
衣 jià

clothes
woolen sweater
stationery shop
document
writing brush
coat hanger
book shop
50 cents

(ii)

便宜
fāng 便
fāng 块字
百 huò
有钱
钱 bāo
商 yè
商 liang

wallet, purse
inexpensive
commerce
convenient
discuss
merchandise
well-off
Chinese characters

CHARACTER BUILDING 3 (101-150)

A. Memorize each of the following radicals and their English names. As a review exercise, write the pinyin and English meaning.

1. [一] 'horizontal stroke'
上 () ; 下 () ;
东 () ; 百 () .
2. [丿] 'downward-left stroke'
午 () ; 年 () .
3. [冫] 'horizontal hook'
了 () ; 买 () .
4. [乚] 'vertical-bend hook'
电 () ; 也 () .
5. [亠] 'top of 六'
商 () ; 六 () .
6. [八] 'eight'
半 () ; 分 () ;
7. [人] 'people'
人 () ; 今 () ;
会 () ; 个 () .
8. [亻] 'upright person'
候 () ; 件 () ;
便 () ; 们 () .
9. [口] 'mouth'
吃 () ; 哪 () ;
名 () ; 吗 () .
10. [宀] 'roof'
宜 () ; 字 () ;
11. [广] 'broad'
床 () ; 店 () .
12. [辶] 'movement'
进 () ; 还 () ;
这 () .

13. [土] 'earth'
 在 () _____ ; 城 () _____ ;
 块 () _____ .
14. [日] 'sun'
 日 () _____ ; 早 () _____ ;
 明 () _____ ; 晚 () _____ .
 昨 () _____ ; 星 () _____ ;
 时 () _____ .
15. [月] 'moon/flesh'
 月 () _____ ; 期 () _____ .
16. [钅] 'metal'
 钟 () _____ ; 钱 () _____ .
17. [母] 'mother'
 每 () _____ ; 母 () _____ .

B. Write the pinyin and meaning against the characters classified under the following radicals.

- | | | | |
|-----------|------------|---|-----------|
| 1. [亻] | 'private' | 去 | () _____ |
| 2. [饣] | 'food' | 饭 | () _____ |
| 3. [大] | 'big' | 天 | () _____ |
| 4. [彡] | 'feathery' | 影 | () _____ |
| 5. [止] | 'stop' | 步 | () _____ |
| 6. [毛] | 'hair' | 毛 | () _____ |
| 7. [宀] | 'cave' | 空 | () _____ |
| 8. [衣] | 'clothing' | 衣 | () _____ |
| 9. [西] | 'west' | 西 | () _____ |
| 10. [目] | 'eye' | 看 | () _____ |
| 11. [足] | 'foot' | 跑 | () _____ |
| 12. [走] | 'walk' | 起 | () _____ |

C. Write the pinyin and meaning against the characters which share the following components. (Note that these components are not necessarily used as radicals.)

1. [工] 工 () ; 空 () .
2. [土] 去 () ; 在 () .
3. [木] 床 () ; 样 () .
4. [日] 早 () ; 影 () .
星 () .
5. [月] 期 () ; 明 () .
6. [且] 宜 () ; 姐 () .
7. [乍] 昨 () ; 怎 () .

REVIEW 3 (101-150)

The following are words and phrases classified under parts of speech. Write the pinyin and meaning.

Interrogative 什么时候 () .
pronouns

Nouns 天 () ; 日 () ;
星期 () ; 月 () ;
年 () ; 钱 () ;
床 () ; 城 () ;
学期 () ; 日期 () ;
商店 () ; 东西 () ;
文件 () ; 毛衣 () ;
电影 () ; 空儿 () ;
小时 () ; 分钟 () .

Verbs 吃 () ; 买 () ;
看 () ; 去 () ;
跑步 () ; 起床 () .

Numbers 半 () ; 百 () .

Classifiers 块 () ; 毛 () ;
件 () .

- Adjectives 早 () ; 晚 () ;
 好吃 () ; 有钱 () ;
 便宜 () ; 空 () .
- Time words 现在 () ; 昨天 () ;
 (Adverbs) 今天 () ; 明天 () ;
 上午 () ; 下午 () ;
 早上 () ; 晚上 () ;
 每天 () ; 今年 () ;
 去年 () ; 明年 () ;
 有时候 () ;
 上 (个) 星期 () ;
 这 (个) 星期 () ;
 下 (个) 星期 () ;
- Adverbs 一起 () ; 一块儿 () .
- Prepositions 在 () .
- Particles 了 () .

WORD/SENTENCE PUZZLE 3

Find and CIRCLE words, phrases or sentences hidden in the puzzle. They can be found horizontally from left to right or vertically. The lines across and down are indicated by numbers. Write the meaning next to the pinyin. The first one is done for you.

ACROSS (left to right)

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------|
| 1. Jīntiān shì Jiǔyuè Èrshíwǔrì. | <u>Today is September 25th.</u> |
| 3. Wǎnshang nǐ zuò shénme? | _____ |
| 5. Wǒmen měige Xīngqītiān dōu jìnnchéng. | _____ |
| 8. Nǐ měitiān jǐ diǎn qǐchuáng? | _____ |
| 10. Míngtiān wǒ qù mǎi dōngxi. | _____ |

DOWN

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------|
| 1. Jīntiān wǎnshang wǒ yǒu kòng. | _____ |
| 2. Nǐ měitiān dōu qù pǎobù ma? | _____ |
| 4. Zuótiān nǐ qù kàn diànyǐng le ma? | _____ |
| 6. Dōngxi hěn piányi. | _____ |
| 8. (i) Wǔbǎi kuài | _____ |
| 8. (ii) Shāngdiàn zài nǎr? | _____ |
| 10. Chénglì de máoyī duōshao qiǎn? | _____ |

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
1	今	天	是	九	月	二	十	五	日	人
2	天	名	姓	贵	朋	识	英	百	样	怎
3	晚	上	你	做	什	么	和	块	亲	吃
4	上	字	认	友	学	没	文	老	两	早
5	我	们	每	个	星	期	天	都	进	城
6	有	时	体	谢	期	年	父	医	母	里
7	空	男	小	昨	大	岁	比	饭	生	的
8	候	你	每	天	几	点	起	床	弟	毛
9	儿	每	子	你	身	还	女	妹	师	衣
10	明	天	我	去	买	东	西	猫	问	多
11	下	都	上	看	年	西	姐	商	只	少
12	贵	去	半	电	会	很	在	店	请	钱
13	中	跑	现	影	里	便	午	在	汉	忙
14	家	步	妈	了	爸	宜	分	哪	写	这
15	英	吗	美	吗	哪	谁	说	儿	狗	不

脑

nǎo brain

腦

The character combines *flesh* 月 and the phonetic 囟 to refer to the *brain*.

Radical: 月 'flesh/moon'

Index # 103

Character components: 月 + 囟

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 脑 nǎo brain

我今天用脑过度。

Wǒ jīntiān yòng nǎo guòdù.

I overtaxed my brain today.

2. 脑筋 nǎojīn brain

多动脑筋才能解决问题。

Duō dòng nǎojīn cái néng jiějué wèntí.

By exercising one's brain more often, one can resolve problems.

3. 脑汁 nǎozhī brain

我绞尽脑汁也想不出解决方法。

Wǒ jiǎojìn nǎozhī yě xiǎngbuchū jiějué fāngfǎ.

I racked my brain but I still couldn't work it out.

4. 电脑 diànnǎo computer

她刚买了一台电脑。

Tā gāng mǎile yì tái diànnǎo.

She just bought a computer.

5. 豆腐脑儿 dòufu'nǎor jellied beancurd

我喜欢吃豆腐脑儿。

Wǒ xǐhuan chī dòufu'nǎor.

I'm fond of jellied beancurd.

The second last stroke is a vertical bend.

10 strokes

丿	月	月	月	月	肱	肱	肱	肱	脑			

台

tái platform; [classifier]

臺

The character combines *mouth* 口 and *private* 厶 to suggest the idea of *platform*. The whole character is used as a phonetic.

Radical: 厶 'private'

or 口 'mouth'

Character components: 厶 + 口

Index # 23

Index # 50

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 台 **tái** classifier

我想买一台新电脑。

Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yī tái xīn diànnǎo.

I want to buy a new computer.

2. 台阶 **táijiē** steps, stairs

台阶真多, 把我累死了。

Táijiē zhēn duō, bǎ wǒ lèisǐ le.

There are so many steps, I'm dead tired.

3. 台湾 **Táiwān** Taiwan

我没去过台湾。

Wǒ méi qùguo Táiwān.

I haven't been to Taiwan.

4. 台北 **Táiběi** Taipei

听说台北空气污染很严重。

Tīngshuō Táiběi kōngqì wūrǎn hěn yǎnzhòng.

I've heard that air pollution in Taipei is really serious.

5. 台球 **táiqiú** billiards

台球在中国很流行。

Táiqiú zài Zhōngguó hěn liúxíng.

Billiards are quite popular in China.

The top and bottom components are the same size.

5 strokes

厶	厶	台	台	台									

卖

mài sell

賣

The simplified form combines *ten* 十 and *buy* 买 to suggest the idea of *sell*. Associate the extra component with the 4th tone to mark the meaning of *sell*.

Radical: 十 'ten'

Index # 11

Character components: 十 + 买

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 卖 mài sell
这台电视机 怎么 卖? / 这台电视机
Zhè tái diànshìjī zěnmē mài? / Zhè tái diànshìjī
卖 多少 钱?
mài duōshao qián?
How much is this TV set?
2. 卖力 mǎilì exert all one's strength
她 做事 很 卖力。
Tā zuòshì hěn mǎilì.
She puts in her best when she works.
3. 卖座 mǎizuò draw large audiences
(literally, seat seller)
那部 电影 可 卖座 啦。
Nà bù diànyǐng kě mǎizuò la.
That movie drew audiences.
4. 卖弄 mǎinòng show off one's cleverness
他 喜欢 卖弄 小 聪明。
Tā xǐhuan mǎinòng xiǎo cōngmíng.
He likes to show off his smartness.
5. 买卖 mǎimài business
我 父亲 是 做 买卖 的。
Wǒ fùqin shì zuò mǎimài de.
My father is a businessman.

End the last stroke firmly.

8 strokes

一	十	土	丰	丰	丰	卖	卖						

千

qiān thousand

The character combines *person* 亻 and *one* 一 to represent many people in a crowd. It came to mean a *thousand*.

Radical: 丿 'downward-left stroke'

Index # 4

Character components: 丿 + 十

Character configuration: ☐

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 千 qiān thousand
这是一千块钱, 请你点一点。
Zhè shì yìqiān kuài qián, qǐng nǐ diǎnyídiǎn.
This is altogether 1000 dollars, please check it.
2. 千里 qiānlǐ a long distance (literally, a thousand miles)
千里之行, 始于足下。
Qiānlǐ zhī xíng, shǐ yú zú xià.
A thousand-li journey begins with the first step.
3. 千万 qiānwàn be sure to
千万要小心啊!
Qiānwàn yào xiǎoxīn a!
Do be careful!
4. 千方百计 qiānfāng-bǎiji in a thousand and one ways
他千方百计地请好大夫看病。
Tā qiānfāng-bǎiji de qǐng hǎo dàifu kànbìng.
He goes all out to find good doctors to treat his illness.
5. 千篇一律 qiān piān yī lǜ following the same pattern
那些文章千篇一律, 没有什么新东西。
Nàxiē wénzhāng qiān piān yī lǜ, méiyǒu shénme xīn dōngxi.
Those articles are like the rest; they offer nothing new.

The top stroke sweeps down to the left.

3 strokes

一	二	千											

万

wàn ten thousand

萬

The full form depicted insects in grass which were counted in their tens of thousands. Thus the idea of *ten thousand*.

Radical: 一 'horizontal stroke'

Index # 2

Character component: 万

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 万 wàn ten thousand

买一辆小汽车要八万元。

Mǎi yì liǎng xiǎo qìchē yào bā wàn yuán.

It costs ¥80,000 to buy a small car.

2. 百万 bǎiwàn million

她想嫁给百万富翁。

Tā xiǎng jià gěi bǎiwàn fùwēng.

She wants to marry a millionaire.

3. 一千万 yì qiānwàn 10 million

北京的人口超过一千万。

Běijīng de rénkou chāoguò yìqiānwàn.

Beijing's population exceeds 10 million.

4. 万事 wànshì all things

万事起头难。

Wànshì qǐtóu nǎn.

Everything is difficult in the beginning.

5. 万一 wànyī just in case

万一有人找我, 就请他留个条。

Wànyī yǒu rén zhǎo wǒ, jiù qǐng tā liú ge tiáo.

If someone looks for me, please ask him to leave a message.

The last stroke ends with a hook.

3 strokes

一	丿	万										

元

yuán

first; Chinese dollar

The character originally represented the figure of a person's head and neck, it symbolizes *origin* and *source*.

Radical: 二 'two'

or 儿 'son'

Character components: 二 + 儿

Index # 10

Index # 21

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 元 yuán dollar
买一辆小汽车要八万元。
Mǎi yì liǎng xiǎo qìchē yào bā wàn yuán.
It costs ¥80,000 to buy a small car.
2. 美元 Měiyuán American dollars
一百美元兑换九百人民币。
Yībǎi Měiyuán duìhuàn jiǔbǎi Rénmínbì.
US\$100 exchanges for ¥900.
3. 元旦 Yuándàn New Year's Day
一月一号是元旦，放假一天。
Yīyuè-yīhào shì Yuándàn, fàngjià yì tiān.
January 1st, being New Year's Day, is a holiday.
4. 公元 Gōngyuán A.D., the Christian era
公元一九一二年民国建立。
Gōngyuán yījiǔyī'èr nián Mǐn'guó jiànli.
In 1912, the Republic of China was established.
5. 公元前 Gōngyuánqián B.C. (before the Christian era)
公元前二二一年秦始皇
Gōngyuánqián èr'èryī'nián Qínshǐhuáng
统一中国。
tǒngyī Zhōngguó.
In 221 B.C. the Qin Emperor unified China.

The lower horizontal stroke is longer.

4 strokes

一	二	ㄚ	元									

太

tài too

The character combines *big* 大 and a dot to signify the idea of *bigger*. By extension, *super* and *excessive* were derived.

Radical: 大 'big'

Index # 43

Character components: 大 + 、

Character configuration: 

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 太 **tài** too
太贵了,可以便宜点儿吗?
Tài guì le, kěyǐ piányidiǎnr ma?
It's too expensive! Can you make it cheaper?
2. 太阳 **tàiyáng** the sun
你看, 太阳出来了。
Nǐ kàn, tàiyáng chūlai le.
Look, the sun is out.
3. 太空 **tàikōng** outer space
美国 发明 太空梭。
Měiguó fāmíng tàikōngsuō.
The Americans invented the space shuttle.
4. 太平洋 **Tàipíngyáng** the Pacific Ocean
中国 在 太平洋 西边。
Zhōngguó zài Tàipíngyáng xībian.
China is situated at the west of the Pacific Ocean.
5. 太极拳 **tàijíquán** Taichi
我会打太极拳, 可是打得不好。
Wǒ huì dǎ tàijíquán, kěshì dǎde bù hǎo.
I can do Taichi, but not very well.

The last stroke ends firmly.

4 strokes

一	ナ	大	太									

就

jiù right away

The character combines *capital city* 京 and the phonetic 尤 to suggest the idea of *right away*.

Radical: 亠 'top of 六'

Index # 6

Character components: 京 + 尤

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 就 jiù as early as
今天我七点钟就来了。
Jīntiān wǒ qī diǎnzhōng jiù lái le.
I was here as early as 7 o'clock today.
2. 就是 jiùshì exactly
就是嘛, 我也是这么想的。
Jiù shì ma, wǒ yě shì zhème xiǎng de.
Precisely, that's just what I had in mind.
3. 就手 jiùshǒu while you are at it
就手把门关上。
Jiùshǒu bǎ mén guānshàng.
Close the door behind you.
4. 就要 jiùyào be going to
火车就要开了。
Huǒchē jiùyào kāi le.
The train is about to leave.
5. 就算 jiùsuàn even if
就算你等了半个钟头, 也不
应该发这么大的脾气吧。
Jiùsuàn nǐ děngle bàn ge zhōngtóu, yě bù
yīnggāi fā zhème dà de píqì ba.
Granted that you have waited for half an hour,
still there is no reason to blow your top.

The second last stroke ends with a hook.

12 strokes

丶	一	亠	言	言	亨	亨	京	京	就	就	就	

吧

ba [particle]

罷

The character combines *mouth* 口 and the phonetic 巴 to indicate a *suggestion*.

Radical: 口 'mouth'

Index # 6

Character components: 口 + 巴

Character configuration:

--	--

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 吧 ba *suggestion [particle]*

我们 走吧。

Wǒmen zǒu ba.

Let's go.

2. 就 ... 吧 jiù ... ba *consent or approval*

明天 就 明天 吧。

Míngtiān jiù míngtiān ba.

All right, let's make it tomorrow.

3. 会 ... 吧 huì ... ba *confirmation*

他 会 来吧?

Tā huì lái ba?

He'll come, won't he?

4. 好像是 ... 吧 hǎoxiàng shì ... ba *doubt or uncertainty*

他 好像 是 这么 说的 吧。

Tā hǎoxiàng shì zhème shuō de ba.

It seems that's what he said.

5. ... 吧 , ... 吧 , ... ba, ... ba, *marking a pause*

去吧, 不好; 不去吧, 也不好。

Qù ba, bùhǎo; búqù ba, yě bùhǎo.

If I go, it's no good; if I don't, it's no good either.

Finish the last stroke with a hook.

7 strokes

丨	𠂇	𠂈	𠂉	𠂊	𠂋	𠂌	吧							

零

líng zero

The character 零 combines *rain* 雨 and the phonetic 令 to suggest *fragmentary*. It also means *zero*.

Radical: 雨 'rain'

Index # 172



Character components: 雨 + 令

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 零 líng zero

现在 六点 零 八分。

Xiānzài liùdiǎn-líng-bāfēn.

The time now is 6:08.

2. 零下 língxià below zero

今天 气温 是 摄氏 零下 五度。

Jīntiān qìwēn shì shèshì língxià wǔ dù.

Today's temperature is 5°C below zero.

3. 零钱 língqián small change

我要 换 点 零钱。

Wǒ yào huàn diǎn língqián.

I want to get some small change.

4. 零碎 língsuì piecemeal

我 还 有 点 儿 零碎 事情 没有

Wǒ hái yǒu diǎnr língsuì shìqíng méiyǒu

办完。

bānwán.

I still have some loose ends to tie up.

5. 零用钱 língyòngqián pocket money

你 一个 月 给 孩子 多少 零用钱?

Nǐ yí ge yuè gěi háizi duōshao língyòngqián?

How much pocket money do you give

your child a month?

Finish the last stroke firmly.

13 strokes

一	丨	冫	冫	冫	冫	冫	冫	冫	冫	冫	冫	冫

Quiz 16 (151–160)

A. Look at the 16-character grid and **CIRCLE** words or phrases. They can be written horizontally or vertically. Look at the encircled characters in the Key if unsure. **COPY** the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

	Word or phrase			Pinyin	Meaning		
元	太	贵	了	(i)	太 贵 了	Tài guì le!	It's too expensive!
千	卖	怎	买	(ii)			
电	万	么	东	(iii)			
脑	就	样	西	(iv)			

B. Refer to the characters in the 16-character grid above and **CONVERT** the pinyin phrases into characters and check their English meaning in the Key.

(i)	Zhè tài diànnǎo mài duōshao qián?									
(ii)	Yīwàn-èrqīān yuán.									
(iii)	Tài guì le, jiù yīwàn kuài ba.									
(iv)	Yīwàn-líng-bābǎi, zěnmeyàng?									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)

电脑
 台 jiē
 台 wān
 卖 zuò
 卖 lì
 一千万
 百万
 万一

Taiwan
 10 million
 just in case
 computer
 exert one's strength
 stairs
 draw large audiences
 million

(ii)

美元
 元 dàn
 gōng 元
 太 jíquán
 太贵了
 太 yáng
 zǒu 吧
 零钱

A.D.
 It's too expensive
 American dollars
 New Year's Day
 small change
 Taichi
 sun
 Let's go

读

dú read

讀

The full character combines *word* 言 and *sell* 賣 to suggest the idea of *to cut*. Thus it may mean punctuating a story at every clause and thus *to read*.

Radical: 讠 'word'

Index # 9

Character components: 讠 + 十 + 买

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 读 dú read
这部小说值得一读。
Zhè bù xiǎoshuō zhíde yì dú.
This novel is worth reading.
2. 读书 dúshū study
他读书很用功。
Tā dúshū hěn yònggōng.
He studies hard.
3. 读本 dúběn textbook
这是一本汉语读本。
Zhè shì yì běn Hànyǔ dúběn.
This is a Chinese reader.
4. 读者 dúzhě reader (of a book, newspaper, etc.)
你看了今天报上的读者来信
Nǐ kànle jīntiān bàoshang de dúzhě láixìn
没有?
méiyǒu?
Have you read the letters to the editor in today's paper?
5. 阅读 yuèdú read
我来图书馆阅读杂志。
Wǒ lái túshūguǎn yuèdú zázhì.
I came to the library to read magazines.

The last stroke ends firmly.

10 strokes

丶	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠	讠	读	读			

练

liàn practice

Full form

練

The full form combines *silk* 纟, *tie together* 束 and *divide* 丿. It may represent raw silk glossed, selected and tied together. It means *practice*.

Radical: 纟 'silk'

Index # 68

Character components: 纟 + 东

Character configuration:

--	--

Compounds, sentences and meanings

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>1. 练 liàn practice
我 下定 决心 练好 身体。
Wǒ xiàdìng juéxīn liànhǎo shēntǐ.
<i>I've made up my mind to get fit.</i></p> <p>2. 练习 liànxí practice
我 每天 练习 写 汉字。
Wǒ měitiān liànxí xiě Hànzì.
<i>I practice writing Chinese characters every day.</i></p> <p>3. 练习本 liànxībēn workbook
这 是 汉字 读写 练习本。
Zhè shì Hànzì dú-xiě liànxībēn.
<i>This is a Chinese character reading workbook.</i></p> | <p>4. 练习题 liànxítí exercise problems
今天 的 作业 有 两 条 练习题 我
Jīntiān de zuòyè yǒu liǎng tiáo liànxítí wǒ
不会 做。
búhuì zuò.
<i>There are two exercise problems that I can't do in today's homework.</i></p> <p>5. 练武 liànwǔ practice martial arts
我 每天 早晨 都 练武。
Wǒ měitiān zǎochēn dōu liànwǔ.
<i>I practice martial arts every morning.</i></p> |
|--|---|

Note the difference between 东 and 东.

8 strokes

ノ	纟	纟	纟	纟	纟	纟	纟						

习

xí practice

習

The full form represents the idea that a young bird flaps its wings many times, thus the meaning of *practice*.

Radical: 习 'horizontal-vertical-hook'

Index # 5

Character component: 习

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 习 **xí** practice
习非 成 是。
Xī fēi chéng shì.
Accept what is wrong as right.
2. 习惯 **xíguàn** habit
我 习惯 早起。
Wǒ xíguàn zǎoqǐ.
I'm used to getting up early.
3. 习染 **xírǎn** fall into a bad habit of
青年人 很 容易 习染 抽烟。
Qīngniánrén hěn róngyì xírǎn chōuyān.
It's easy for young people to pick up the bad habit of smoking.
4. 习气 **xíqì** bad habit
中国 的 官僚 习气 很 严重。
Zhōngguó de guānliáo xíqì hěn yánzhòng.
Bad bureaucratic habits prevail in China.
5. 习俗 **xísú** custom
中国人 有 赏月 的 习俗。
Zhōngguó rén yǒu shǎngyuè de xísú.
The Chinese people have the custom of enjoying the full moon.

The first stroke ends with a hook.

3 strokes

习	习	习										

书

shū book

Full form

書

The full form expresses the hand holding a brush writing a *book*. The cursive style of writing the character was adopted as the simplified form.

Radical: 一 'horizontal-bend'

Index # 5

Character components: 一 + 丿 + | + 、

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 书 shū book

这是一本教科书。

Zhè shì yì běn jiàokēshū.

This is a textbook.

2. 书包 shūbāo school bag

小孩背着书包上学。

Xiǎohái bēizhe shūbāo shàngxué.

The children carry their school bags on their backs to go to school.

3. 书店 shūdiàn book store

马路对面有一家书店。

Mǎlù duìmiàn yǒu yì jiā shūdiàn.

There is a book store across the road.

4. 书架 shūjià bookshelf

我刚买了一个书架。

Wǒ gāng mǎile yí ge shūjià.

I just bought a bookshelf.

5. 书法 shūfǎ calligraphy

我觉得中国书法很好看。

Wǒ juéde Zhōngguó shūfǎ hěn hǎokàn.

I think Chinese calligraphy is beautiful.

The second stroke ends with a hook.

4 strokes

一	丿	书	书										

词

cí word

詞

The full form combines *speech* 言 and the phonetic 司 to give the idea of *word*.

Radical: 讠 'word'

Index # 9

Character components: 讠 + 司

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 词 cí new words
调子 我记得,可是 词儿我 忘了。
Diàozi wǒ jìde, kěshì cír wǒ wàng le.
I remember the tune all right, but I've forgotten the words.
2. 词典 cídiǎn dictionary
这 本 词典 很 有用。
Zhè běn cídiǎn hěn yǒuyòng.
This dictionary is very useful.
3. 生词 shēngcí new words
这 篇 短文 生词 太多。
Zhè piān duǎnwén shēngcí tài duō.
This narrative has too many new words.
4. 单词 dāncí single word
我 学 的 单词 不 够 用。
Wǒ xué de dāncí bùgòu yòng.
I haven't learnt enough words.
5. 词汇表 cíhuìbiǎo glossary
书 后 面 有 词汇表。
Shū hòumiàn yǒu cíhuìbiǎo.
There's a glossary at the back of the book.

The second stroke is a horizontal-bend-lift.

7 strokes

'	讠	订	词	词	词	词						

典

diǎn standard

The character is a phonetic but used as a character. It means *standard* or *canon*.

Radical: 八 'eight'

Index # 17

Character components: 曲 + 八

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 典 diǎn ceremony

校长 邀请 我 参加 五十 年

Xiàozhǎng yāoqǐng wǒ cānjiā wǔshí nián

校庆 盛典。

xiàoqīng shèngdiǎn.

The headmaster invited me to take part in the school's 50th anniversary ceremony.

2. 典礼 diǎnlǐ ceremony

校长 邀请 我 参加 五十 年

Xiàozhǎng yāoqǐng wǒ cānjiā wǔshí nián

校庆 典礼。

xiàoqīng diǎnlǐ.

The headmaster invited me to take part in the school's 50th anniversary ceremony.

3. 典型 diǎnxíng typical

这是 典型 的 中国 村庄。

Zhè shì diǎnxíng de Zhōngguó cūnzhuāng.

This is a typical Chinese village.

4. 词典 cídiǎn dictionary

这本 词典 很 有用。

Zhè běn cídiǎn hěn yǒuyòng.

This dictionary is very useful.

5. 古典 gǔdiǎn classical

我 喜欢 古典 音乐。

Wǒ xǐhuan gǔdiǎn yīnyuè.

I like classical music.

The bottom horizontal stroke is longer.

8 strokes

丶	冂	巾	曲	曲	曲	典	典					

本

běn root, base; [classifier]

The character represents a *tree* 木 with a line marked at the base, referring to the most important part. It means *foundation*. It is also used as *classifier* for books.

Radical: 木 'tree'

Index # 81
Character components: 木 + 一

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>1. 本 běn classifier
我去 图书馆 借了 两 本 书。
Wǒ qù túshūguǎn jiè le liǎng běn shū.
<i>I went to the library and borrowed two books.</i></p> <p>2. 本地 běndì local
我 是 本地人。
Wǒ shì běndìrén.
<i>I was born here.</i></p> <p>3. 本行 běnháng one's own profession
搞 电脑 是 我 的本行。
Gǎo diànnǎo shì wǒde běnháng.
<i>Computers are my line of work.</i></p> | <p>4. 本来 běnlái original
他 本来 身体 很 瘦弱。
Tā běnlái shēntǐ hěn shòuruò.
<i>He used to be thin and weak.</i></p> <p>5. 本领 běnlǐng ability
他的 本领 很 大。
Tāde běnlǐng hěn dà.
<i>He's very capable.</i></p> |
|--|---|

Make sure the bottom horizontal stroke is not too low.
5 strokes

一	十	才	木	本								

它

tā it

This character is a modern character. *It* can be thought of as a member of the household (it's under the roof) but it is an animal or thing, not a person.

Radical: 宀 'roof'

Index # 34

Character components: 宀 + 匕

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 它 tā it (animal/thing)
这杯牛奶你喝完它。
Zhè bēi niúǎi nǐ hēwán tā.
Drink up this glass of milk.
2. 它的 tāde its (animals/things)
这裙子很好看, 我喜欢它的颜色。
Zhè qúnzi hěn hǎokàn, wǒ xǐhuan tāde yánsè.
This skirt is pretty. I like its color.
3. 它们 tāmen they (animals/things)
猫狗虽然可爱, 但它们不会说话。
Māo gǒu suīrán kě'ài, dàn tāmen búhuì shuōhuà.
Although cats and dogs are cute, they can't speak.
4. 其它 qítā other; else
还有什么其它事情要我们做吗?
Háiyǒu shénme qítā shìqíng yào wǒmen zuō ma?
Is there anything else you want us to do?

The last stroke sweeps from right to left.

5 strokes

丶	亅	宀	宀	它								

帮

bāng help

Full form

幫

The full form denotes the trimming of an upper sole which kept the foot tightly in the shoe. To make the shoe moveable is to *assist* walking. The simplified form borrows the sound 邦 to combine with *napkin* 巾.

Radical: 巾 'napkin'

Index # 52

Character components: 邦 + 巾

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 帮 bāng help

我 帮 她 搬了 行李。

Wǒ bāng tā bānle xíngli.

I helped her with her luggage.

2. 帮助 bāngzhù help

他 帮助 我 学 汉语。

Tā bāngzhù wǒ xué Hànyǔ.

He helps me to learn Chinese.

3. 帮手 bāngshǒu helper

你 真 是 个 好 帮手。

Nǐ zhēn shì ge hǎo bāngshǒu.

You really are a good helper.

4. 帮忙 bāngmáng help

我 要 请 她 帮忙。

Wǒ yào qǐng tā bāngmáng.

I'll ask her to help.

5. 帮倒忙 bāngdǎománg make the matter worse with one's help

请 小 心 点 儿, 别 给 我 帮倒忙

Qǐng xiǎoxīn diǎnr, bié gěi wǒ bāngdǎománg 了。

le.

Please be careful, don't make things worse.

The fourth stroke sweeps down and tapers off.

9 strokes

一	=	三	𠂇	邦	邦	邦	帮	帮				

助

zhù assistance

The character combines *things piled up* 且 and *strength* 力 to represent the act of adding force to an object already under pressure. It means *help*.

Radical: 力 ‘strength’

Index # 31

Character components: 且 + 力

Character configuration:

--	--

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 助 zhù help

感谢你 助 我一臂之力。

Gǎnxiè nǐ zhù wǒ yī bèi zhī lì.

Thanks for lending me a helping hand.

2. 帮助 bāngzhù help

他 帮助 我 学 汉语。

Tā bāngzhù wǒ xué Hànyǔ.

He helps me learn Chinese.

3. 助手 zhùshǒu assistant

他 是 我的 助手。

Tā shì wǒde zhùshǒu.

He is my assistant.

4. 助兴 zhùxìng add to the fun

给 大家 唱 支 歌 助助兴。

Gěi dàjiā chàng zhī gē zhùzhuxìng.

Sing us a song to liven things up.

5. 助学金 zhùxuéjīn grant-in-aid

他 是 领 助学金 的 学生。

Tā shì lǐng zhùxuéjīn de xuésheng.

He is a grant-in-aid student.

The fifth stroke lifts slightly.

7 strokes

丨	丩	𠂇	𠂈	且	𠂉	助	助						

Quiz 17 (161–170)

A. Look at the 16-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

Word or phrase				Pronunciation	Translation		
帮	脑	卖	生	(i)	帮 助	bāngzhù	help
助	零	词	典	(ii)			
它	练	学	就	(iii)			
本	习	读	书	(iv)			

B. Refer to the characters in the 16-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin phrases into characters and check their English meaning in the Key.

(i)	Zhè shì yì běn shénme shū?									
(ii)	Zhè búshì shū, yě búshì cídiǎn.									
(iii)	Zhè shì Hànzì dú-xiě liànxībēn.									
(iv)	Tā bāngzhù wǒ xué Hànzì.									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)	习 sū	calligraphy	(ii)	本 dī	skills
	练习本	dictionary		本 lǐng	assistant
	书店	custom		本 lái	typical
	yuè 读	bookshelves		帮助	local
	书 jià	workbook		助手	help
	书 fā	reading		典 xīng	reading text
	生词	new words		读书	study
	词典	book store		读本	originally

前

qián in front of, ahead

The character represents a slow advance forward by bringing the rear foot up to the heel of the front foot before taking a step. It means *forward*.

Radical: 八 'eight'

Index # 17

Character components: 丷 + 月 + 刂

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 前 qián forward, ahead

我们 应该 往 前 看。

Wǒmen yīnggāi wǎng qián kàn.

We should look ahead.

2. 前面 qiánmian in front of, ahead

前面 有 座位。

Qiánmiàn yǒu zuòwèi.

There are seats in the front.

3. 前边 qiánbian in front of, ahead

前边 有 座位 吗?

Qiánbian yǒu zuòwèi ma?

Are there seats in the front?

4. 前天 qiántiān day before yesterday

前天 他 来过 这里。

Qiántiān tā lái guo zhèlǐ.

He came here the day before yesterday.

5. 前途 qiántú future prospect

你的 工作 很 有 前途。

Nǐde gōngzuò hěn yǒu qiántú.

Your work has great potential.

The last stroke ends with a hook.

9 strokes

丶	丿	一	广	前	前	前	前	前				

后

hòu behind

後

The full form 後 refers to someone who is walking slowly and thus *falling behind*. In simplification, the homonym *queen* 后 is used instead.

Radical: 丿 ‘downward-left-stroke’

or 口 ‘mouth’

Character components: 尸 + 口

Index # 4

Index # 50

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 后 hòu back

屋后 养着 很多 花儿。

Wūhòu yǎngzhe hěnduō huār.

There are flowers growing at the back of the house.

2. 后面 hòumian at the back, behind

后面 还 有 座位。

Hòumian hái yǒu zuòwèi.

There are still some seats at the back.

3. 后天 hòutiān day after tomorrow

后天 你 有 没有 空儿?

Hòutiān nǐ yǒu méiyǒu kōng?

Are you free the day after tomorrow?

4. 后果 hòuguǒ consequence

后果 不堪 设想。

Hòuguǒ bùkān shèxiǎng.

The consequences would be too ghastly to contemplate.

5. 以后 yǐhòu afterwards

以后 你 会 有 机会 去的。

Yǐhòu nǐ huì yǒu jīhuì qù de.

You will have a chance to go later.

The first two strokes are written separately.

6 strokes

一	尸	尸	尸	后	后								

面

miàn face

The pictograph is a face with a nose. It means *face* or *surface*.

Radical: 一 'horizontal stroke'

Index # 2

Character components: 一 + 丌 + 囧

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 面 miàn face

她 常常 面 带 笑容。

Tā chángcháng miàn dài xiàoróng.

She often has a smile on her face.

2. 面貌 miànmào features

他们 的 面貌 十分 相似。

Tāmen de miànmào shífēn xiāngsì.

They look very much alike.

3. 面熟 miànshú look familiar

这 人 看着 面熟。

Zhè rén kànzhe miànshú.

That person looks familiar.

4. 面积 miànjī area

这 套 房子 的 使用 面积 是 五十

Zhè tào fángzi de shǐyòng miànjī shì wǔshí

平方 公尺。

píngfāng gōngchǐ.

The usable area of this apartment is 50 square meters.

5. 面子 miànzi face

他 是老板, 给他留 点 面子 吧。

Tā shì lǎobǎn, gěi tā liú diǎn miànzi ba.

He is our boss, show some respect.

Note the difference between 面 and 而.

9 strokes

一	丌	丌	丌	而	而	而	而	面				

旁

páng next to

The character combines *standing* 立 and the phonetic 方 to suggest the idea that while standing on a fixed locality, one is conscious of direction. It means *adjacent to*.

Radical: 方 'direction'

Index #74

Character components: 产 + 方

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 旁 páng other
旁的还要什么?
Páng de hái yào shénme?
Do you want anything else?
2. 旁边 pángbiān next to
坐在我旁边吧。
Zuò zài wǒ pángbiān ba.
Why don't you sit next to me?
3. 两旁 liǎngpáng both sides
马路两旁种了很多树。
Mǎlù liǎngpáng zhòngle hěnduō shù.
There are lots of trees planted on both sides of the road.
4. 旁观者 pángguānzhě onlooker
旁观者清。
Pángguānzhě qīng.
The spectator sees most clearly.
5. 旁听 pángtīng be a visitor in a school class
我明天旁听你的课可以吗?
Wǒ míngtiān pángtīng nǐde kè kěyǐ ma?
May I sit in on your lecture tomorrow?

The last stroke ends with a hook.

10 strokes

丶	㇀	㇁	㇂	㇃	立	𠂔	𠂕	𠂖	旁	旁			

对

duì opposite; correct

對

The full form combines 𠂔 and 寸 to give the idea of *symmetry*. The simplified form replaces 𠂔 with 又 which also functions as a radical.

Radical: 又 'again'

or 寸 'inch'

Character components: 又 + 寸

Index # 24

Index # 46

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 对 duì correct
这件事你做得很对。
Zhè jiàn shì nǐ zuòde hěn duì.
You did the right thing.
2. 对面 duìmiàn opposite
他家就在我家对面。
Tā jiā jiù zài wǒ jiā duìmiàn.
His house is opposite mine.
3. 对不起 duìbuqǐ I'm sorry
对不起, 给你添麻烦了。
Duìbuqǐ, gěi nǐ tiān máfan le.
Sorry to have given you so much trouble.
4. 对手 duìshǒu opponent
他不是你的对手。
Tā búshì nǐde duìshǒu.
He's no match for you.
5. 对于 duìyú with regard to, about
对于他的工作我没有什么
意见。
Duìyú tāde gōngzuò wǒ méiyǒu shénme
yìjiàn.
I have no complaints about his work.

End the second stroke firmly.

5 strokes

ㄅ	ㄆ	ㄇ	对	对								

院

yuàn courtyard

The character combines *earth-mound* 阝 and the phonetic 完 to give the meaning of a large *building* with an earthen wall around it, e.g. schools and hospitals.

Radical: 阝 'left-ear lobe'

Index # 27

Character components: 阝 + 完

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 院 yuàn courtyard

院里 种了 几颗 果树。

Yuànli zhòngle jǐ kē guǒshù.

There are some fruit trees in the courtyard.

2. 院子 yuànzi courtyard

我 家 有 个 院子， 孩子 们 可 以 在 那 儿

Wǒ jiā yǒu ge yuànzi, háizimen kěyǐ zài nàr

玩儿。

wánr.

My house has a yard for the children to play in.

3. 医院 yīyuàn hospital

医院 对面 是 公园。

Yīyuàn duìmiàn shì gōngyuán.

Opposite the hospital is a park.

4. 住院 zhùyuàn stay in hospital

他 住 了 两 个 星 期 的 院。

Tā zhùle liǎng ge xīngqī de yuàn.

He was hospitalized for two weeks.

5. 电影院 diànyǐngyuàn cinema

这 是 新 开 的 电 影 院。

Zhè shì xīnkāi de diànyǐngyuàn.

This is a new cinema.

The last stroke ends with a hook.

9 strokes

了	阝	阝	阝	阝	阝	阝	院	院				

校

jiào/xiào check; school

The character combines *tree* 木 and the phonetic 交 to give the idea of distinguishing right from wrong. It is pronounced *jiào* (to check) and *xiào* (school).

Radical: 木 'tree'

Index # 81

Character components: 木 + 交

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 校 jiào check, proofread
先 校 错字, 然后 校 标点 符号。
Xiān jiào cuòzì, ránhòu jiào biāodiǎn fúhào.
First proofread for typos, then correct the punctuation.
2. 校对 jiàoduì check, proofread
校对 汉字 时, 要 注意 笔顺。
Jiàoduì Hànzì shí, yào zhùyì bǐshùn.
When proofreading Chinese characters, pay attention to the stroke order.
3. 学校 xuéxiào school
这个 学校 有 一百 年 的历史。
Zhè ge xuéxiào yǒu yībǎi nián de lìshǐ.
This school has a 100-year history.
4. 校园 xiàoyuán campus
校园 进行 绿化 已经 一 年 了。
Xiàoyuán jìnxíng lǜhuà yǐjīng yì nián le.
The greening of our campus has been under way for a year.
5. 母校 mǔxiào Alma Mater
悉尼 大学 是 我的 母校。
Xīní Dàxué shì wǒde mǔxiào.
Sydney University is my Alma Mater.

The second stroke sweeps to the left.

10 strokes

一	十	才	木	术	术	术	术	术	校			

公

gōng public

The character was derived from *divide* 八 and *private property* 厶 to give the idea of making private property *public*.

Radical: 八 'eight'

Index # 17

Character components: 八 + 厶

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>1. 公 gōng official business
我 今天 因 公 外出。
Wǒ jīntiān yīn gōng wàichū.
<i>Today I'm going on official business.</i></p> <p>2. 公共 gōnggòng public
公共 场所 不准 抽烟。
Gōnggòng chǎngsuǒ bùzhǔn chōuyān.
<i>No smoking in public places.</i></p> <p>3. 公里 gōnglǐ kilometer
我 家离 学校 一 公里。
Wǒ jiā lí xuéxiào yī gōnglǐ.
<i>My house is one kilometer from the school.</i></p> | <p>4. 公斤 gōngjīn kilogram
买 一 公斤 桔子。
Mǎi yī gōngjīn júzi.
<i>Give me [buy] a kilogram of oranges.</i></p> <p>5. 公升 gōngshēng liter
买 四十 公升 汽油。
Mǎi sìshí gōngshēng qìyóu.
<i>Give me [buy] 40 liters of gasoline.</i></p> |
|--|---|

Leave a gap between the first two strokes.

4 strokes

ノ	八	公	公										



yuán garden; park



The full form combines *surround* 口 and *ample room* 袁 to mean ‘a wide fenced area such as an orchard or a garden.’ The phonetic 袁 is replaced by 元 in simplification.

Radical: 口 ‘4-sided frame’

Index # 51

Character components: 口 + 元

Character configuration: 

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 园 yuán garden
我 家 园子 种了 几颗 果树。
Wǒ jiā yuánzi zhòngle jǐ kē guǒshù.
There are a few fruit trees in my garden.
2. 公园 gōngyuán park
假日里 很多 人 到 公园 去 玩儿。
Jiàrlì, hěnduō rén dào gōngyuán qù wánr.
On holidays, many people go to the park to enjoy themselves.
3. 花园 huāyuán (flower) garden
我 家 前面 有 一个 小 花园。
Wǒ jiā qiánmiàn yǒu yí ge xiǎo huāyuán.
There's a small garden in front of our house.
4. 苹果园 píngguǒyuán apple orchard
这里 一带 都 是 苹果园。
Zhèlǐ yí dài dōu shì píngguǒyuán.
There are apple orchards around here.
5. 动物园 dòngwùyuán zoo
北京 动物园 有 大 熊猫。
Běijīng dòngwùyuán yǒu dà xióngmāo.
There are pandas in Beijing Zoo.

The sealing stroke is written last.

7 strokes

丨	冂	冂	冂	冂	园	园						

Quiz 18 (171–180)

A. Look at the 16-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

				Word or phrase	Pinyin	Meaning
院	前	对	父	(i) 前 边	qiánbian	in front of, ahead
旁	边	母	面	(ii)		
公	后	校	园	(iii)		
西	家	生	学	(iv)		

B. Refer to the characters in the 16-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin phrases into characters and check their English meaning in the Key.

(i)	Qiánmiàn shì yīyuàn.									
(ii)	Xuéxiào hòumiàn shì gōngyuán.									
(iii)	Diànyǐngyuàn zài nǎr?									
(iv)	Diànyǐngyuàn zài xuéxiào duìmiàn.									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)	前面	outside	(ii)	前天	afterwards
	后面	above, on top of		后天	cinema
	两旁	seaside		yǐ 后	the day after tomorrow
	hǎi 边	ahead, in front of		医院	park
	上边	I'm sorry		电影院	the day before yesterday
	wài 边	opposite		学校	hospital
	对不起	behind, at the back		面子	respect, 'face'
	对面	on both sides		公园	school

离

lí depart

離

The full form combines *bird* 隹 and the phonetic 离 to suggest the idea of escaping or to *separate*. The simplified form retains only the phonetic part.

Radical: 亠 ‘top of 六’

Index # 6

Character components: 亠 + 凶 + 内

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 离 lí distance from
公园 离 学校 有 一公里。
Gōngyuán lí xuéxiào yǒu yī gōnglǐ.
The park is one kilometer from the school.
2. 离婚 lǐhūn divorce
离婚 以后 他 就 没有 再 结婚。
Lǐhūn yǐhòu tā jiù méiyǒu zài jiéhūn.
He hasn't remarried since his divorce.
3. 离开 líkāi depart
离开 北京, 她 坐 火车 去 西安。
Líkāi Běijīng, tā zuò huǒchē qù Xī'ān.
Departing Beijing, she took the train to Xian.
4. 离别 líbié bid farewell
我 离别 故乡 已经 十 年了。
Wǒ líbié gùxiāng yǐjīng shí nián le.
It's been ten years since I left my hometown.
5. 离题 lítí digress from the subject
发言 不要 离题。
Fāyán bùyào lítí.
Please keep to the subject when you speak.

End the last stroke firmly.

10 strokes

丶	亠	ナ	文	玄	凶	𠂔	离	离	离			

远

yuǎn far

遠

The full form combines *movement* 辶 and the phonetic 袁 which carries the idea of *ample room*. Thus it means *ample distance* or *far*. In simplification, the simpler phonetic 元 is used.

Radical: 辶 'movement'

Character components: 元 + 辶

Index # 38

Character configuration: 

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 远 yuǎn far

公园 离 学校 有 多 远?

Gōngyuán lí xuéxiào yǒu duō yuǎn?

How far is the park from the school?

2. 远处 yuǎnchù distant point or place

我 看见 几个人 从 远处 走来。

Wǒ kànjiàn jǐ ge rén cóng yuǎnchù zǒulái.

I saw a few people coming towards me from a distance.

3. 远近 yuǎnjìn distance

这 两 条 路 远近 差不多。

Zhè liǎng tiáo lù yuǎnjìn chàbuduō.

The distance is about the same by either road.

4. 远大 yuǎndà long-range, lofty

年青人 应该 有 远大 的理想。

Niánqīng rén yīnggāi yǒu yuǎndà de lǐxiǎng.

Young people ought to have lofty ideals.

5. 长远 chángyuǎn long-term

从 长远 的 观点 看 问题。

Cóng chángyuǎn de guāndiǎn kàn wèntí.

Look at problems from a long-term view.

The last stroke of 元 ends with a hook.

7 strokes

一	二	丅	元	元	沅	远						

直

zhǐ straight

The character combines *direct* 十, *eye* 目 and *hidden* 一, suggesting the idea of taking a *direct* look at something concealed.

Radical: 十 'ten'

Index # 11

Character components: 十 + 且

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 直 zhǐ straight
这里的街道又宽又直。
Zhèlǐ de jiēdào yòu kuān yòu zhǐ.
The streets are wide and straight.
2. 一直 yìzhí all the way
你从这儿一直走就是了。
Nǐ cóng zhèr yìzhí zǒu jiù shì le.
Go straight ahead and you'll be there.
3. 直到 zhídào until
我直到昨晚才接到通知。
Wǒ zhídào zuówǎn cái jiēdào tōngzhī.
I was not informed until last night.
4. 直接 zhíjiē direct
你应该直接跟我说。
Nǐ yīnggāi zhíjiē gēn wǒ shuō.
You should speak to me directly.
5. 直来直去 zhílái-zhíqù blunt, frank and outspoken
她是个直来直去的人，说话
Tā shì ge zhílái-zhíqù de rén, shuōhuà
有口无心。
yǒukǒu-wúxīn.
She's a blunt woman, often speaking sharply but she means well.

The three short horizontals are in the middle.

8 strokes

一	十	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇					

往

wǎng toward

The character combines *slow pace* 彳 and *to go to* 主 to give the meaning of *proceeding in a certain direction* or *toward*.

Radical: 彳 ‘double-person’

Index # 54

Character components: 彳 + 主

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 往 wǎng toward
你 往 东 走去 就是了。
Nǐ wǎng dōng zǒu qù jiù shì le.
Go east and you'll get there.
2. 往往 wǎngwǎng often
这里 春天 往往 刮 大风。
Zhèlǐ chūntiān wǎngwǎng guā dà fēng.
It's often windy here in spring.
3. 往常 wǎngcháng habitually in the past
她 往常 不 这样。
Tā wǎngcháng bù zhèyàng.
She wasn't like that before.
4. 往返 wǎngfǎn journey there and back.
往返 要 多 长 时间?
Wǎngfǎn yào duō cháng shíjiān?
How long does it take to get there and back?
5. 往来 wǎnglái contact, dealings
他们 两 家人 往来 很 密切。
Tāmen liǎng jiā rén wǎnglái hěn mìqiè.
The two families are in close contact.

Note the difference between 往 and 住.

8 strokes

丶	勹	彳	彳	彳	彳	往	往						

走

zǒu walk

The character depicts a person *running*, taking long strides and with arms outstretched.

Radical: 走 'walk'

Index # 156

Character components: 土 + 止

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 走 zǒu walk
一直 往 前 走。
Yízhí wǎng qián zǒu.
Go straight ahead.
2. 走路 zǒulù go on foot
你们 是 坐车 去 还是 走路 去?
Nǐmen shì zuòchē qù háishì zǒulù qù?
Will you go there by bus or on foot?
3. 走运 zǒuyùn be in luck
祝 你 走运!
Zhù nǐ zǒuyùn!
Good luck!
4. 走失 zǒushī wander away
我们 一起 出去 的, 半路 上 她 走失 了。
Wǒmen yìqǐ chūqu de, bàn lù shàng tā zǒushī le.
We went out together and she got lost on the way.
5. 走动 zǒudòng stretch one's legs
坐了一 整天 了, 出去 走动 走动
Zuòle yì zhěngtiān le, chūqu zǒudòng zǒudòng 吧。
ba.
We've been sitting all day long. Let's go out and stretch our legs.

The second horizontal is longer.

7 strokes

一	十	土	丰	丰	走	走						

过

guō pass; cross

過

The full form combines *movement* 辶 and the phonetic 𠂔 to suggest the idea of *surpassing* or *to pass the limit*.

Radical: 辶 'movement'

Index # 38

Character components: 寸 + 辶

Character configuration: 

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 过 guō pass, cross
过 两 条 街 就 是。

Guò liǎng tiáo jiē jiù shì.

Cross two streets and you are there.

2. 过敏 guòmǐn allergy
我 对 牛 奶 过 敏。

Wǒ duì niú nǎi guòmǐn.

I'm allergic to milk.

3. 过去 guòqù formerly
他 比 过 去 瘦 多 了。

Tā bǐ guòqù shòu duō le.

He's much thinner than he used to be.

4. 过时 guòshí out of date
这 件 衣 服 早 就 过 时 了。

Zhè jiàn yīfu zǎo jiù guòshí le.

This garment is long out of fashion.

5. 不过 búguò but, however
爸 爸 的 身 体 还 不 错, 不 过 有 点 儿
Bāba de shēntǐ hái búcuò, búguò yǒudiǎnr
胖。

páng.

My dad's health is quite good, but he is a bit overweight.

End the third last stroke firmly.

6 strokes

一	十	寸	寸	讨	过							

条

tiáo [classifier]

條

The simplified form combines *tree* 木 and 夂, which is the figure of a hand holding a stick. It also means an *item*.

Radical: 夂 ‘top of 冬’

or 木 ‘tree’

Character components: 夂 + 木

Index # 57

Index # 81

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 条 tiáo classifier
过了这条街就是。
Guòle zhè tiáo jiē jiù shì.
You're there after you pass this street.
2. 条件 tiáojiàn condition
这里的工作条件还不错。
Zhèlǐ de gōngzuò tiáojiàn hái búcuò.
The working conditions here are quite okay.
3. 条里 tiáolǐ orderliness
她工作很有条理。
Tā gōngzuò hěn yǒu tiáolǐ.
She is a methodical worker.
4. 便条 biàntiáo short note
你给他写个便条吧。
Nǐ gěi tā xiě ge biàntiáo ba.
Why don't you write him a note?
5. 面条 miàntiáo noodles
北方人一般喜欢吃面条。
Běifāng rén yībān xǐhuan chī miàntiáo.
In North China, people prefer noodles.

The fifth stroke ends with a hook.

7 strokes

丶	㇏	夂	冬	条	条								

街

jiē street

The character is made up of 彳, 圭 and 亍. The first and third components combine to mean *business firms* or *shops*. The addition of the middle component suggests that the shops line up to form a *street*.

Radical: 彳 'double-person'

Index # 54

Character components: 彳 + 圭 + 亍

Character configuration:

--	--	--

Compounds, sentences and meanings

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>1. 街 jiē street
这条街很宽。
Zhè tiáo jiē hěn kuān.
<i>This street is very wide.</i></p> <p>2. 街道 jiēdào residential district
这里的街道很干净。
Zhèlǐ de jiēdào hěn gānjìng.
<i>This neighborhood is very clean.</i></p> <p>3. 大街 dàjiē main street
我们去逛大街怎么样?
Wǒmen qù guāng dàjiē zěnmeyàng?
<i>How about if we stroll around the streets?</i></p> | <p>4. 上街 shàngjiē go shopping
妈妈上街去了。
Māma shàngjiē qù le.
<i>Mum has gone shopping.</i></p> <p>5. 唐人街 Tángrenjiē Chinatown
西方国家很多城市都有唐人街。
Xīfāng guójiā hěnduō chéngshì dōu yǒu Tángrenjiē.
<i>Many cities in the West have Chinatowns.</i></p> |
|--|--|

The seventh stroke is horizontal.

12 strokes

丶	㇀	彳	亍	𠂇	𠂈	𠂉	𠂊	𠂋	𠂌	𠂍	街	

见

jiàn see

見

The character combines *eyes* 目 and *child* 儿 to give the idea of eyes on two legs or *see*. The simplified form has one of the legs extended into the eyes.

Radical: 见 'see'

Index # 93

Character component: 见

Character configuration: ☐

Compounds, sentences and meanings

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>1. 见 jiàn see
下午他要来见你。
Xiàwǔ tā yào lái jiàn nǐ.
<i>He's coming to see you this afternoon.</i></p> <p>2. 见面 jiànmiàn meet, see
他们经常见面。
Tāmen jīngcháng jiànmiàn.
<i>They see a lot of each other.</i></p> <p>3. 见识 jiànshi experience, knowledge
多旅游, 长见识。
Duō lǚyóu, zhǎng jiànshi.
<i>More travels will broaden your experience.</i></p> | <p>4. 见笑 jiànxiào laugh at (me or us)
我刚开始学, 您别见笑。
Wǒ gāng kāishǐ xué, nín bié jiànxiào.
<i>Don't laugh at me, I'm only a beginner.</i></p> <p>5. 再见 zàijiàn see you again
下星期天再见。
Xià xīngqītīan zàijiàn.
<i>I'll see you next Sunday.</i></p> |
|--|---|

The last stroke ends with a hook.

4 strokes

丨	冂	冂	见										

Quiz 19 (181–190)

A. Look at the 16-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write down the pinyin and meaning.

				Word or phrase	Pinyin	Meaning
两	条	街	离	(i)	两 条 街	liǎng tiáo jiē two streets
习	就	一	远	(ii)		
边	过	直	再	(iii)		
往	前	走	见	(iv)		

B. Refer to the characters in the 16-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin phrases into characters and check their English meaning in the Key.

(i)	Qǐngwèn, qù yīyuán zěnmě zǒu?									
(ii)	Yízhí wǎng qián zǒu.									
(iii)	Lǐ zhèr yuǎn ma?									
(iv)	Bù yuǎn, guò liǎng tiáo jiē jiù shì.									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)	离 kāi	long term	(ii)	面条	laugh at (me or us)
	远 jìn	until		条 lǐ	again and again
	cháng 远	distance		再 cì	meet, see
	直 dào	depart		再三	noodles
	往往	often		上街	go shopping
	走 lù	out of fashion		见面	once again
	走 yùn	lucky		见识	methodical
	过时	on foot		见 xiào	experience, knowledge

近

jìn near

The character combines *movement* 辶 and the phonetic 斤 which carries the idea of an ax. It suggests a short distance within the arch of an ax.

Radical: 辶 'movement'

Index # 38

Character components: 斤 + 辶

Character configuration: 

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 近 jìn near
我家离火车站很近。
Wǒ jiā lí huǒchēzhàn hěn jìn.
My house is near the rail station.
2. 近来 jīnlái recently
近来他的身体不太好。
Jīnlái tāde shēntǐ bù tài hǎo.
He has been rather unwell recently.
3. 近视 jìnshì near-sighted
她有点近视。
Tā yǒudiǎn jìnshì.
She is slightly short-sighted.
4. 近便 jīnbiàn close and convenient
我们找个近便的饭馆吃午饭吧。
Wǒmen zhǎo ge jīnbiàn de fānguǎn chī wǔfàn ba.
Let's have lunch at the nearest restaurant.
5. 附近 fùjìn nearby
学校附近有一个公园。
Xuéxiào fùjìn yǒu yí ge gōngyuán.
There is a park near the school.

The last stroke tapers off.

7 strokes

丶	厂	尸	斤	斤	祈	近							

外

wài outside

The character combines *crescent moon* 夕 and *divination* 卜. Tortoise shells, emptied of their contents, are used in fortune-telling. It means *outside*.

Radical: 卜 ‘divination’

Index # 14

Character components: 夕 + 卜

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 外 wài outside
这是意料外的事。
Zhè shì yìliào wài de shì.
That's outside my expectation.
2. 外面 wàimian outside
今天我们要在外面吃饭。
Jīntiān wǒmen yào zài wàimian chīfàn.
We are dining out today.
3. 外表 wàibiǎo outward appearance
不要从外表看人。
Búyào cóng wàibiǎo kàn rén.
Don't judge people by their outward appearances.
4. 外国人 wàiguórén foreigner
你有没有外国人居住证?
Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu wàiguórén jūliúzhèng?
Do you have a residence permit for foreigners?
5. 外人 wàirén stranger, outsider
别客气,我又不是外人。
Bié kèqi, wǒ yòu búshì wàirén.
Don't stand on ceremony, I'm no stranger.

End the last stroke firmly.

5 strokes

[illegible]

马

mǎ horse

馬

The full character was derived from a pictograph of a *horse* 馬, showing its four legs and a tail drooping downwards. The simplified form retains the general shape of the *horse*.

Radical: 马 'horse'

Index # 69

Character component: 马

Character configuration: ☐

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 马 mǎ horse

2002年 是马年。

Èrlínglíng'èrnián shì mǎ nián.

2002 is the Year of the Horse.

2. 马路 mǎlù road

过 马路 要 小心 车辆。

Guò mǎlù yào xiǎoxīn chēliàng.

Be careful of vehicles when crossing the road.

3. 马虎 mǎhu careless

他 这个人 做事 比较 马虎。

Tā zhè ge rén zuòshì bǐjiào mǎhu.

He's a rather careless fellow.

4. 马上 mǎshàng at once

你 马上 就走 吗?

Nǐ mǎshàng jiù zǒu ma?

Are you leaving right away?

5. 马拉松 Mǎlāsōng marathon

去年 我 参加了 马拉松 赛跑。

Qùnián wǒ cānjiāle Mǎlāsōng sàipǎo.

Last year I took part in the marathon race.

The last stroke ends in a straight line.

3 strokes

7	马	马											

路

lù road

The character combines *foot* 足 and *each* 各 to suggest the idea that each is going on his or her own way or *road*.

Radical: 足 'foot'

Index # 164

Character components: 足 + 各

Character configuration:

--	--

Compounds, sentences and meanings

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>1. 路 lù route
312 路 公共汽车 去 大学。
Sānyāo'èrlù gōnggòngqìchē qù dàxué.
<i>Route 312 goes to the University.</i></p> <p>2. 路标 lùbiāo road sign
前面 有 路标。
Qiánmiàn yǒu lùbiāo.
<i>There are road signs ahead.</i></p> <p>3. 路上 lùshang en route
路上 不要 耽搁。
Lùshang bùyào dān'ge.
<i>Don't waste any time on the way.</i></p> | <p>4. 路口 lùkǒu intersection
在 路口 左 拐弯。
Zài lùkǒu zuǒ guǎiwān.
<i>Turn left at the intersection.</i></p> <p>5. 路线 lùxiàn route, itinerary
请 你 说说 旅行 路线。
Qǐng nǐ shuōshuo lǚxíng lùxiàn.
<i>Please tell me about the itinerary of the tour.</i></p> |
|--|---|

The seventh stroke slants upwards slightly.

13 strokes

丶	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏

能

néng possible

The character represents the pictograph of an animal with strong muscles. The sense of *capability* or *power* was derived from its features.

Radical: 亠 ‘private’

Index # 23

Character components: 亠 + 月 + 匕 + 匕

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 能 néng be capable of
我 能 用 左 手 写 字。
Wǒ néng yòng zuǒshǒu xiě zì.
I can write with my left hand.
2. 能够 nénggòu be capable of
她 能 够 说 三 种 外 国 语。
Tā nénggòu shuō sān zhǒng wàiguó yǔ.
She can speak three foreign languages.
3. 能干 nénggàn capable
她 是 个 很 能 干 的 人。
Tā shì ge hěn nénggàn de rén.
She's a very capable person.
4. 能力 nénglì ability
她 的 分 析 能 力 很 强。
Tā de fēnxi nénglì hěn qiáng.
She has strong analytical skills.
5. 能源 néngyuán energy
世 界 正 在 面 临 能 源 危 机。
Shìjiè zhèngzài miànlín néngyuán wēijī.
The world is facing an energy crisis.

The seventh and ninth strokes sweep to the left.

10 strokes

㇀	亠	个	𠂆	𠂆	𠂆	𠂆	能	能	能			

左

zuǒ left

The character represents the idea of the left hand with which the carpenter uses his square. Thus it means *left*.

Radical: 工 'work'

Index # 39

Character components: ナ + 工

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 左 zuǒ left

在 前面 红绿灯 左 拐弯。

Zài qiánmian hónglǜdēng zuǒ guǎiwān.

Turn left at the lights.

2. 左边 zuǒbian the left

房子 左边 有一颗大树。

Fángzi zuǒbian yǒu yì kē dà shù.

There's a big tree on the left side of the house.

3. 左手 zuǒshǒu left hand

他 能 用 左手 写字。

Tā néng yòng zuǒshǒu xiězì.

He can write with his left hand.

4. 左撇子 zuǒpiězi left-handed person

他 是个左撇子。

Tā shì ge zuǒpiězi.

He's left-handed.

5. 左右 zuǒyòu about (used after a numeral)

他 说 八点 左右 到这儿来。

Tā shuō bādiǎn zuǒyòu dào zhèr lái.

He said he'll be here around 8:00.

Don't mistake 左 for 在. Note the difference between 左 and 在.

5 strokes

一	ナ	左	左	左									

手

shǒu hand

The character is derived from the shape of a *hand* with its five fingers extended.

Radical: 手 'whole hand'

Index # 96

Character component: 手

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>1. 手 shǒu hand
这是手织的毛衣。
Zhè shì shǒuzhī de máoyī.
<i>This is a hand-knitted sweater.</i></p> <p>2. 手纸 shǒuzhǐ toilet paper
厕所没有手纸了。
Cèsuǒ méiyǒu shǒuzhǐ le.
<i>There's no toilet paper in the lavatory.</i></p> <p>3. 手气 shǒuqì luck at gambling
我今晚打牌的手气好得出奇。
Wǒ jīnwǎn dǎpái de shǒuqì hǎode chūqí.
<i>I've had a lot of luck at cards/mahjong tonight.</i></p> | <p>4. 手艺 shǒuyì craftsmanship
那个裁缝的手艺很好。
Nà ge cáifeng de shǒuyì hěn hǎo.
<i>That tailor is very skilful.</i></p> <p>5. 手续 shǒuxù formalities
请过来这边办入境手续。
Qǐng guòlai zhèbian bàn rùjìng shǒuxù.
<i>Please come over here to go through the entry formalities.</i></p> |
|--|--|

The last stroke ends with a hook.

4 strokes

一	二	三	手									

只

zhǐ only

祇

The full form combines *ceremony* 礻 and the phonetic 氏 to suggest the idea of *only*. The simplified form uses 只, but is pronounced in the 3rd tone. See also *zhī* in character #90.

Radical: 口 'mouth'

or 八 'eight'

Character components: 口 + 八

Index # 50

Index # 17

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 只 zhǐ only

我 只 想 问 一个 问题。

Wǒ zhǐ xiǎng wèn yí ge wèntí.

I only want to ask a question.

2. 只顾 zhǐgù just think of

你 别 只顾 自己。

Nǐ bié zhǐgù zìjǐ.

Don't just think of yourself.

3. 只是 zhǐshì merely

我 说 这个 只是 开个 玩笑 罢了。

Wǒ shuō zhè ge zhǐshì kāi ge wánxiào ba le.

I said it merely as a joke.

4. 只要 ... 就 zhǐyào ... jiù if only

只要 虚心, 就 会 进步。

Zhǐyào xūxīn, jiù huì jìnbù.

If you are modest, you'll get on.

5. 只有 zhǐyǒu be forced to

如果 下 大雨, 比赛 只有 延期。

Rúguǒ xià dàyǔ, bǐsài zhǐyǒu yánqī.

If it rains hard, we have to put off the match.

The last stroke ends firmly.

5 strokes

丶	冂	口	尸	只								

Quiz 20 (191–200)

A. Look at the 16-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

Word or phrase				Pinyin	Meaning		
能	过	右	手	(i)	右 手	yòushǒu	right hand
过	左	手	里	(ii)			
近	用	进	马	(iii)			
远	外	面	路	(iv)			

B. Refer to the characters in the 16-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin phrases into characters and check their English meaning in the Key.

(i)	Xuēxiào lí zhèr yuǎn bu yuǎn?								
(ii)	Hěn jīn, guòle mǎlù jiù shì.								
(iii)	Nǐ néng yòng zuǒshǒu xiězì ma?								
(iv)	Bù néng, wǒ zhǐ néng yòng yòushǒu.								

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)	附近	capable	(ii)	用 chù	formalities
	近 lái	nearby		用 xīn	craftsmanship
	外面	outside		左边	the left
	外国人	intersection		右 cè	toilet paper
	马 hu	foreigner		手 zhǐ	right side
	马上	immediately		手 yī	merely
	路口	careless		手 xù	use
	能 gān	recently		只是	attentively

CHARACTER BUILDING 4 (151–200)

A. Memorize the following radicals and their English names. As a review exercise, write the pinyin and meaning of each example.

1. [一] 'horizontal stroke'
再 () ; 万 ()
面 () .
2. [丿] 'downward-left stroke'
千 () ; 后 () ;
3. [㇚] 'horizontal-bend-hook'
习 () ; 书 () ;
4. [亠] 'top of 六'
离 () ; 就 () .
5. [讠] 'word'
读 () ; 词 () ;
6. [二] 'two'
二 () ; 元 () ;
7. [十] 'ten'
直 () ; 卖 () ;
8. [八] 'eight'
典 () ; 前 () ;
公 () .
9. [亻] 'private'
能 () ; 去 () ;
10. [又] 'again'
对 () ; 友 () ;
11. [力] 'strength'
助 () ; 男 () ;
12. [宀] 'roof'
它 () ; 字 () .
13. [辶] 'movement'
远 () ; 过 () ;
边 () ; 近 () ;
14. [工] 'work'
工 () ; 左 () ;
15. [大] 'big'
太 () ; 天 () ;

16. [口] 'mouth'
台 () ; 右 () .
17. [口] 'four-sided frame'
园 () ; 国 () .
18. [巾] 'napkin'
帮 () ; 师 () ;
19. [彳] 'double-person'
往 () ; 街 () .
20. [木] 'wood'
本 () ; 校 () .
21. [月] 'moon/flesh'
脑 () ; 期 () ;
22. [走] 'walk'
走 () ; 起 () .
23. [足] 'foot'
路 () ; 跑 () .

B. Write the pinyin and meaning against the characters classified under the following radicals.

- | | | | |
|--------|-----------------|---|-----|
| 1. [卜] | 'divination' | 外 | () |
| 2. [阝] | 'left ear-lobe' | 院 | () |
| 3. [夊] | 'top of 冬' | 条 | () |
| 4. [纟] | 'silk' | 练 | () |
| 5. [马] | 'horse' | 马 | () |
| 6. [方] | 'direction' | 旁 | () |
| 7. [手] | 'hand' | 手 | () |
| 8. [用] | 'use' | 用 | () |
| 9. [雨] | 'rain' | 雨 | () |

C. Write the pinyin and meaning against the characters which share the following components. (Note that these components are not necessarily used as radicals.)

1. [卖] 卖 () ; 读 () ;
2. [寸] 对 () ; 过 () .
3. [力] 边 () ; 助 () .
4. [月] 脑 () ; 明 () ;
5. [巴] 吧 () ; 爸 () .
6. [口] 右 () ; 名 () .

REVIEW 4 (151–200)

The following are words and phrases classified under parts of speech. Write the pinyin and meaning of each example.

Pronouns	它 () _____; 它们 () _____;
Nouns	脑 () _____; 电脑 () _____; 零钱 () _____; 读本 () _____; 练习本 () _____; 书 () _____; 书店 () _____; 词 () _____; 生词 () _____; 词典 () _____; 帮手 () _____; 助手 () _____; 面子 () _____; 医院 () _____; 电影院 () _____; 学校 () _____; 校园 () _____; 母校 () _____; 公里 () _____; 公园 () _____; 远近 () _____; 面条 () _____; 街 () _____; 见识 () _____; 外国人 () _____; 外人 () _____; 路 () _____; 马路 () _____; 路口 () _____; 手 () _____.
Verbs	卖 () _____; 读 () _____; 读书 () _____; 练 () _____; 练习 () _____; 学习 () _____; 帮 () _____; 帮助 () _____; 帮忙 () _____; 住院 () _____; 走 () _____; 过 () _____; 上街 () _____; 见 () _____; 见面 () _____; 用 () _____.
Auxiliary verbs	能 () _____.
Numbers	零 () _____; 千 () _____; 万 () _____; 百万 () _____; 一千万 () _____.
Classifiers	台 () _____; 元 () _____; 件 () _____; 条 () _____.

Adjectives	远 () _____ ; 直 () _____ ;
	近 () _____ ; 对 () _____ ;
	过时 () _____ .
Location words	前 () _____ ; 后 () _____ ;
	前面 () _____ ; 后面 () _____ ;
	前边 () _____ ; 两旁 () _____ ;
	旁边 () _____ ; 上边 () _____ ;
	外边 () _____ ; 对面 () _____ ;
	外面 () _____ ; 路上 () _____ ;
	左 () _____ ; 左边 () _____ ;
	右 () _____ ; 右边 () _____ ;
Time words (Adverbs)	前天 () _____ ; 后天 () _____ ;
	以后 () _____ .
Adverbs	千万 () _____ ; 就 () _____ ;
	一直 () _____ ; 直到 () _____ ;
	往往 () _____ ; 再 () _____ ;
	再三 () _____ ; 马上 () _____ ;
	只 () _____ ; 只是 () _____ .
Conjunction	不过 () _____ .
Prepositions	离 () _____ .
Particles	吧 () _____ .

WORD/SENTENCE PUZZLE 4

Find and CIRCLE words, phrases or sentences hidden in the puzzle. They can be found horizontally from left to right or vertically. The lines across and down are indicated by numbers. Write down the meaning next to the pinyin. The first one is done for you.

ACROSS (left to right)

1. Tā bǔhuì yòng diànnǎo.
4. Wǒ jiā qiánmiàn yǒu yī ge dà shāngdiàn.
7. (i) zuǒbian
7. (ii) Nǐ jīntiān qù xuéxiào ma?
8. zhùshǒu
9. wàimian
10. zìdiǎn

She can't use a computer

12. Diànyǐngyuàn lí zhèr yuǎn bù yuǎn?

14. Chī miàntiáo.

DOWN

2. Wǒ néng yòng zuǒshǒu xiězì.

4. Yīyuàn pángbiān.

5. Qǐng nǐ bāngmáng.

6. Tā jiālǐ yǒu gǒu.

7. Míngtiān wǒmen zài nǎr jiànmiàn?

9. Duībùqǐ!

10. Shāngdiàn zài xiàoyuán wàibian.

11. shūdiàn

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
1	能	过	右	只	吧	她	不	会	用	电	脑
2	进	左	直	再	习	家	手	里	本	词	它
3	零	步	元	直	就	里	走	近	过	马	书
4	街	我	家	前	面	有	一	个	大	商	店
5	往	能	街	离	太	狗	钱	路	对	店	面
6	千	用	一	远	请	猫	明	毛	钟	在	现
7	卖	左	边	万	你	今	天	去	学	校	吗
8	助	手	走	见	帮	了	我	半	点	园	吃
9	工	写	公	作	忙	早	们	上	晚	外	面
10	台	字	典	生	时	下	在	候	午	边	跑
11	昨	月	子	医	饭	床	哪	人	对	日	空
12	星	电	影	院	离	这	儿	远	不	远	女
13	东	每	亲	旁	早	看	见	做	起	母	明
14	买	西	城	边	友	吃	面	条	父	期	进

住

zhù live

The character combines *person* 亻 and the phonetic 主 to suggest the idea of *to live* or *stay*.

Radical: 亻 ‘upright person’

Index # 19

Character components: 亻 + 主

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 住 zhù to live, to stay

你 住 在哪儿?

Nǐ zhù zài nǎr?

Where do you live?

2. 住处 zhùchù lodging

你 找到 住处 没有?

Nǐ zhǎodào zhùchù méiyǒu?

Have you found accommodation?

3. 住户 zhùhù household

这儿 有 姓 陈 的 住户 吗?

Zhèr yǒu xìng Chén de zhùhù ma?

Is there anyone named Chen living here?

4. 住院 zhùyuàn be hospitalized

他 病了, 住了 两 天 院。

Tā bìng le, zhù le liǎng tiān yuàn.

He was sick and was hospitalized for two days.

5. 住宅 zhùzhái one's residence

这 是 我 住宅 的 电话。

Zhè shì wǒ zhùzhái de diànhuà.

This is my home phone number.

The left and right components don't meet.

7 strokes

ノ	亻	亻	仁	仁	住								

到

dào arrive

The character combines *reaching* 至 and 刂 to suggest the idea of *reaching like a cut*. Thus it means *to arrive*.

Radical: 刂 ‘upright knife’

Index # 15

Character components: 至 + 刂

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 到 dào arrive

火车 到站 了。

Huǒchē dào zhàn le.

The train has arrived at the station.

2. 到处 dào chù everywhere, anywhere

烟头 不要 到处 乱 扔。

Yāntóu bùyào dào chù luàn rēng.

Don't drop cigarette butts over the place.

3. 到底 dào dǐ finally

你 到底 是 什么 意思?

Nǐ dào dǐ shì shénme yìsi?

What on earth do you mean?

4. 到家 dào jiā be excellent

这 几个 汉字 写得 很 到家。

Zhè jǐ ge Hànzì xiě de hěn dào jiā.

These Chinese characters are remarkably well written.

5. 到期 dào qī become due

这 本 书 已经 到期 了。

Zhè běn shū yǐ jīng dào qī le.

This book is due for return.

The sixth stroke goes upwards.

8 strokes

一	丿	㇇	㇏	㇑	至	到	到					

从 cōng from

從

The full form represents the idea of *following another person*, and means *follow* or *obey*. The simplified form retains the same idea using just two persons.

Radical: 人 'person'

Index # 18

Character components: 人 + 人

Character configuration:

--	--

Compounds, sentences and meanings

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>1. 从 cōng from
你 从 哪儿来?
Nǐ cōng nǎr lái?
<i>Where do you come from?</i></p> <p>2. 从 ... 到 cōng ... dào from ... to
她 从 早 到 晚 都 想着 跳舞。
Tā cōng zǎo dào wǎn dōu xiǎngzhe tiàowǔ.
<i>She thinks of dancing day and night.</i></p> <p>3. 从来 cōnglái all along
我 从来 没有 见过 他。
Wǒ cōnglái méiyǒu jiànguò tā.
<i>I've never seen him before.</i></p> | <p>4. 从前 cóngqián formerly
这 是 从前, 现在 不 一样了。
Zhè shì cóngqián, xiànzài bù yíyàng le.
<i>That was in the past, now it is different.</i></p> <p>5. 从小 cóngxǎo from childhood
我 从小 就 喜欢 运动。
Wǒ cóngxǎo jiù xǐhuan yùndòng.
<i>I love sports ever since I was a child.</i></p> |
|--|--|

The last stroke tapers off.

4 strokes

丿	乚	ㄩ	从										

坐

zuò sit

The character depicts the figure of *two people* 人 + 人 sitting on the *ground* 土. This gives rise to the idea of *to sit*.

Radical: 土 'earth'

Index # 40

Character components: 人 + 人 + 土

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 坐 zuò sit
请坐。
Qǐng zuò.
Please sit down.
2. 坐火车 zuò huǒchē travel by train
我坐火车去上海。
Wǒ zuò huǒchē qù Shànghǎi.
I'm traveling to Shanghai by train.
3. 坐位 zuòwèi seat
请回到你的坐位上去。
Qǐng huí dào nǐ de zuòwèi shàng qù.
Please return to your seat.
4. 坐不下 zuòbuxià have not enough seats for
这车坐不下这么多人。
Zhè chē zuòbuxià zhème duō rén.
This car can't seat so many people.
5. 坐班 zuòbān keep office hours
我的孩子还小, 不适合干坐班的工作。
Wǒ de háizi hái xiǎo, bù shìhé gàn zuòbān de gōngzuò.
My children are still small, it's not convenient for me to work in an office.

The vertical stroke separates the two 人 components.

7 strokes

ノ	人	人ノ	人人	人土	坐	坐						

地

dì earth

The character combines *soil* 土 and the pictograph of a scorpion 也 to give the meaning of *earth*.

Radical: 土 'earth'

Index # 40

Character components: 土 + 也

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 地 **dì** fields
农民 在地里干活儿。
Nóngmín zài dìlǐ gānhuór.
The peasants are working in the fields.
2. 地方 **dìfang** place, space
这个 地方 不错。
Zhè ge dìfang búcuò.
This is quite a nice place.
3. 地图 **dìtú** map
你 有 没有 中国 地图?
Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu Zhōngguó dìtú?
Do you have a map of China?
4. 地下 **dìxià** on the ground
你的 毛衣 掉 在地下了。
Nǐde máoyī diào zài dìxià le.
Your sweater fell on the ground.
5. 地道 **dìdao** pure, typical
他的 广州话 说得 真 地道。
Tāde Guǎngzhōuhuà shuōde zhēn dìdao.
He speaks Cantonese like a native.

The last stroke ends with a hook.

6 strokes

一	十	土	切	地								

铁

tiě iron

Full form

鐵

The simplified form combines *metal* 钅 and the phonetic 失 to suggest the idea of *iron*. The use of this phonetic in simplification is arbitrary, probably for ease of writing.

Radical: 钅 'metal'

Index # 122

Character components: 钅 + 失

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 铁 tiě iron
这是铁的事实。
Zhè shì tiě de shìshí.
This is ironclad evidence.
2. 钢铁 gāngtiě steel
他在钢铁厂工作。
Tā zài gāngtiěchǎng gōngzuò.
He works in a steelworks.
3. 铁路 tiělù railway
火车在铁路上走。
Huǒchē zài tiělù shàng zǒu.
Trains travel on railway tracks.
4. 地铁 dìtiě subway
中国很多大城市都有地铁。
Zhōngguó hěnduō dà chéngshì dōu yǒu dìtiě.
Many big cities in China have subways.
5. 铁饭碗 tiěfǎnwǎn iron rice-bowl
现在中国没有铁饭碗了。
Xiànzài Zhōngguó méiyǒu tiěfǎnwǎn le.
There are no secure jobs in China now.

The fifth stroke is a vertical lift.

10 strokes

ノ	ㄆ	ㄆ	ㄆ	ㄆ	ㄆ	ㄆ	ㄆ	铁	铁			

车

chē vehicle

車

The full form depicts the two wheels and carriage of a *vehicle* viewed from above.

Radical: 车 ‘vehicle’

Index # 84

Character component: 车

Character configuration: ☐

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 车 chē vehicle
路上 有 很多 车。
Lùshang yǒu hěnduō chē.
There are many vehicles on the road.
2. 车费 chēfèi (passenger's) fare
到 颐和园 的 车费 多少?
Dào Yíhéyuán de chēfèi duōshao?
How much is the fare to the Summer Palace?
3. 火车 huǒchē train
中国 的 火车 比较 慢。
Zhōngguó de huǒchē bǐjiào màn.
Trains in China are rather slow.
4. 公共汽车 gōnggòngqìchē bus
中国 的 公共汽车 很 挤。
Zhōngguó de gōnggòngqìchē hěn jǐ.
Buses in China are packed.
5. 车祸 chēhuò traffic accident
前面 好像 发生 了 车祸。
Qiánmian hǎoxiàng fāshēngle chēhuò.
It seems that there's an accident ahead.

The last stroke doesn't meet the top horizontal stroke.

4 strokes

一	乚	ㄥ	车										

北

běi north

The character depicts two people standing back to back, a reference to turning one's back to the direction of the *north*.

Radical: | 'vertical stroke'

Index # 3

Character components: 丩 + 匕

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 北 běi north
你从这儿往北走。
Nǐ cóng zhèr wǎng běi zǒu.
Go north from here.
2. 北方 běifāng northern
这个饭馆儿做的是北方菜。
Zhè ge fānguǎnr zuò de shì běifāngcài.
This restaurant serves northern Chinese cuisine.
3. 东北 dōngběi north-east
大连市在中国东北。
Dàliánshì zài Zhōngguó dōngběi.
The city of Dalian is in north-east China.
4. 北京 Běijīng Beijing
2008年奥运会在北京举办。
Èrlínglíngbā'nián Àoyùnhuì zài Běijīng jǔbàn.
The 2008 Olympic Games will be hosted by Beijing.
5. 北美洲 Běiměizhōu North America
北美洲包括美国和加拿大。
Běiměizhōu bāokuò Měiguó hé Jiā'nádà.
North America includes the US and Canada.

The last stroke is a vertical-bend hook.

5 strokes

丨	丿	㇏	𠂇	北								

京

jīng capital

The character means *man-made high hill* to accommodate important people. It came to mean a *palace* or *capital*.

Radical: 宀 ‘top of 六’

Index # 6

Character components: 宀 + 口 + 小

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 京 jīng capital

从外地进京的车辆很多。

Cóng wàidì jìn jīng de chēliàng hěnduō.

Lots of vehicles come to the capital from other parts of the country.

2. 北京 Běijīng Beijing

2008年奥运会在北京举办。

Èrlínglíngbā nián Àoyùnhuì zài Běijīng jǔbàn.

The 2008 Olympic Games will be hosted by Beijing.

3. 南京 Nánjīng Nanjing (Nanking)

南京也有很多名胜古迹。

Nánjīng yě yǒu hěnduō míngshèng gǔjī.

There are also many scenic spots and historical sites in Nanjing.

4. 东京 Dōngjīng Tokyo

东京是日本的首都。

Dōngjīng shì Riběn de shǒudū.

Tokyo is the capital of Japan.

5. 京剧 Jīngjù Beijing opera

我没看过京剧。

Wǒ méi kànguo Jīngjù.

I've never watched Beijing opera.

The last stroke ends firmly.

8 strokes

丶	一	宀	宀	宀	京	京	京						

南

nán south

The character can be thought of as *ten* 十 houses with plants growing inside 阝, a reference to villages in the *south*.

Radical: 十 'ten'

Index # 11

Character components: 十 + 阝

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 南 **nán** south
你从这儿往南走。
Nǐ cóng zhèr wǎng nán zǒu.
Go south from here.
2. 南边 **nánbian** south side
学校南边有一个公园。
Xuéxiào nánbian yǒu yí ge gōngyuán.
There is a park on the southern side of the school.
3. 南部 **nánbù** southern part
广州在广东省南部。
Guǎngzhōu zài Guǎngdōng shěng nánbù.
Canton is in the south of Guangdong province.
4. 南方 **nánfāng** south of a country
他说话带南方腔调。
Tā shuōhuà dài nánfāng qiāngdiào.
He speaks with a southern accent.
5. 南半球 **nánbànqiú** Southern Hemisphere
澳大利亚在南半球。
Àodàliyà zài Nánbànqiú.
Australia is in the Southern Hemisphere.

Note the difference between 𠂔 and 𠂔 in the bottom half of the character.

9 strokes

一	十	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔				

Quiz 21 (201–210)

A. Look at the 16-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

	Word or phrase			Pinyin	Meaning
	怎	么	走	zěnmě zǒu	How do you get to ...?
	中	到	下		
	国	坐	地		
	城	住	从		
	上				

B. Refer to the characters in the 16-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin phrases into characters and check their English meaning in the Key.

(i)	Wǒ zhù zài chénglǐ.									
(ii)	Dào nǐ jiā zěnmě zǒu?									
(iii)	Nǐ cóng zhèr zuò dìtiě.									
(iv)	Dào Zhōngguóchéng xiàchē jiù shì.									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)	从前	railroad	(ii)	北京	the north
	地 fang	train		北 fāng	seat
	地 tú	formerly		到期	southern part
	地下	place		京 jù	Beijing
	铁路	subway		南 bù	expire
	地铁	bus		住 zhái	Beijing opera
	huǒ 车	map		坐 wèi	North America
	公 gōngqì 车	on the ground		北 Měizhōu	residence

来

lái come

來

The character was derived from a pictograph of a barley plant. Barley was considered a gift from heaven. Thus, it came to mean *to come from* or *to come here*.

Radical: 一 'horizontal stroke'

Index # 2

Character components: 一 + 米

Character configuration: ☐

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 来 lái come

来 客人了。

Lái kèren le.

The guests are here.

2. 来不及 láibují there's not enough time

今天 我们 来不及去 看 他了。

Jīntiān wǒmen láibují qù kàn tā le.

There's no time for us to go and see him today.

3. 来回 láihuí a return journey

来回 有 多 远?

Láihuí yǒu duō yuǎn?

How far is it there and back?

4. 来往 láiwǎng come and go

街上 来往 的 人 很多。

Jiēshang láiwǎng de rén hěnduō.

There are many people coming and going on the streets.

5. 从来 cónglái all along, never

我 从来 没有 见过 他。

Wǒ cónglái méiyǒu jiànguò tā.

I've never seen him before.

The bottom horizontal stroke is longer than the one above.

7 strokes

一	一	冫	亅	𠂇	𠂈	来						

久 jiǔ a long time

The character represents the figure of a person supported from the rear for a long time. It means *after a long time*.

Radical: 丿 'downward-left stroke'

Index # 4

Character component: 久

Character configuration: ☐

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 久 jiǔ for a long time
我们 久不 见面 了。
Wǒmen jiǔ bú jiànmiàn le.
We haven't seen each other for a long time.
2. 多久 duō jiǔ how long?
你来了 多 久?
Nǐ lái le duō jiǔ?
How long have you been here?
3. 久等 jiǔděng wait for a long time
对不起 让 你 久等 了。
Duìbuqǐ, rǎng nǐ jiǔděng le.
Sorry to have kept you waiting.
4. 久留 jiǔliú stay a long time
我 有 要事 在 身, 不能 久留。
Wǒ yǒu yàoshì zài shēn, bùnéng jiǔliú.
I can't stay long because I have some important business to attend to.
5. 不久 bùjiǔ not very long time
回家 不久 就 下 大雨了。
Huíjiā bùjiǔ jiù xià dà yǔ le.
Not long after I came home, it rained.

The last stroke tapers off.

3 strokes

ノ	夕	久										

已

yǐ already

This character *already* 已 looks similar to *self* 己. The difference is it has a half-open gap on the top-left corner of the character while the latter is completely open.

Radical: 己 'self'

Index # 62

Character component: 已

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 已 yǐ already

天 已 黑了。

Tiān yǐ hēi le.

It's already dark.

2. 已经 yǐjīng already

问题 已经 解决了。

Wèntí yǐjīng jiějué le.

The problem has already been solved.

3. 已往 yǐwǎng in the past

已往 的事 不要 再提了。

Yǐwǎng de shì bùyào zài tí le.

Don't mention the past.

4. 而已 ěryǐ that is all

我 只 是 个 学 生 而 已。

Wǒ zhǐ shì ge xuésheng ěryǐ.

I'm just a student, that is all.

己 and 已 are easily confused.

3 strokes

㇀	㇁	已											

经

jīng classics; pass through

經

The full form combines *silk* 糸 and 冫 to suggest *a thing that runs straight* or *a good example*. It means *classics*.

Radical: 纟 'silk'

Index # 68

Character components: 纟 + 冫

Character configuration:

--	--

Compounds, sentences and meanings

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>1. 经 jīng pass through
他经新加坡回广州。
Tā jīng Xīnjiāpō huí Guǎngzhōu.
He returns to Guangzhou via Singapore.</p> <p>2. 经常 jīngcháng frequently
他经常上图书馆去。
Tā jīngcháng shàng túshūguǎn qù.
He goes to the library regularly.</p> <p>3. 经过 jīngguò pass
这路车经过动物园吗?
Zhè lù chē jīngguò dòngwùyuán ma?
Does this bus go past the zoo?</p> | <p>4. 经理 jīnglǐ manager
她在一家饭馆当经理。
Tā zài yì jiā fànguǎn dāng jīnglǐ.
She works as a manager in a restaurant.</p> <p>5. 经验 jīngyàn experience
他的经验很丰富。
Tāde jīngyàn hěn fēngfù.
He's got a lot of experience.</p> |
|---|---|

The final vertical stroke does not go through the upper horizontal stroke.

8 strokes

ノ	纟	纟	纟	纟	纟	纟	纟					

长

chǎng/zhǎng long; grow

長

The full form depicted a long-haired old man with a walking stick, referring to a *long passage of time*. Another meaning is *grow*, pronounced *zhǎng*.

Radical: 丿 'downward-left stroke'

Index # 4

Character component: 长

Character configuration: ☐

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 长 chǎng long
这条河很长。
Zhè tiáo hé hěn chǎng.
This river is quite long.
2. 长江 Chángjiāng the Yangtze river
(literally, long river)
长江是世界第三长河。
Chángjiāng shì shìjiè dìsān cháng hé.
The Yangtze is the third longest river in the world.
3. 长处 chángchù strong points
她有很多长处。
Tā yǒu hěnduō chángchù.
She has many good qualities.
4. 长大 zhǎngdà grow up
他们的孩子长大了。
Tāmende háizi zhǎngdà le.
Their children have grown up.
5. 长辈 zhǎngbèi elder, senior
对长辈要有礼貌。
Duì zhǎngbèi yào yǒu lǐmào.
Show respect for one's elders.

Write the downward-right stroke last.

4 strokes

丶	一	长	长										

间

jiān space

間

The character combines *gate* 门 and *sun* 日 to indicate light shining through a space between the gates. It means *space*.

Radical: 门 'door'

Index # 37

Character components: 门 + 日

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 间 jiān between, among

朋友 之 间 不 要 分 得 太 清。

Péngyou zhī jiān búyào fēnde tài qīng.

Among friends, there should not be clear-cut distinctions.

2. 时间 shíjiān time

现在 是 北 京 时 间 二 十 点 整。

Xiànzài shì Běijīng shíjiān èrshídiǎn zhěng.

The time now is 20 hours Beijing time.

3. 中间 zhōngjiān middle

他 是 我 们 中 间 最 年 轻 的。

Tā shì wǒmen zhōngjiān zuì niánqīng de.

He's the youngest of us three.

4. 房间 fángjiān room

这 个 房 间 又 大 又 亮。

Zhè ge fángjiān yòu dà yòu liàng.

This room is big and bright.

5. 夜间 yèjiān at night

很 多 中 国 城 市 在 夜 间 施 工。

Hěnduō Zhōngguó chéngshì zài yèjiān shīgōng.

Many Chinese cities carry out construction work at night.

The initial dot stroke ends firmly to the right.

7 strokes

丶	丨	门	门	问	问	间							

喜

xǐ happy

The upper part of 喜 represents a bowl filled with food. 口 of course means *mouth*. The idea of carrying food to the mouth means *rejoice*.

Radical: 士 'scholar'

or 口 'mouth'

Character components: 士 + 口 + 𠂇 + 口

Index # 41

Index # 50

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 喜 xǐ be happy

笑在脸上, 喜在心里。

Xiào zài liǎnshang, xǐ zài xīnli.

With a smile on your face and joy in your heart.

2. 喜爱 xǐ'ài be fond of

我喜爱户外活动。

Wǒ xǐ'ài hùwài huódòng.

I'm keen on outdoor activities.

3. 喜欢 xǐhuan be fond of

我喜欢听中国音乐。

Wǒ xǐhuan tīng Zhōngguó yīnyuè.

I like Chinese music.

4. 欢喜 huānxǐ joyful

一家人欢欢喜喜地过春节。

Yī jiā rén huānhuānxǐxǐde guò Chūnjié.

The whole family spent a joyful Chinese New Year.

5. 喜事 xǐshì happy event

你这么高兴, 有什么喜事?

Nǐ zhème gāoxìng, yǒu shénme xǐshì?

You look so happy. What's the good news?

The short strokes in the middle do not protrude.

12 strokes

一	十	士	𠂇	吉	吉	吉	吉	壹	喜	喜	喜	

欢

huān happy

歡

The full form combines *food* 糞 and *open mouth* 欠 to suggest facing food *happily* with the mouth open. It means *happy*.

Radical: 欠 'owe'

or 又 'again'

Character components: 又 + 欠

Index # 104

Index # 24

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 欢 huān joyous
大家 欢天喜地 地 过 圣诞节。
Dàjiā huāntiān-xǐdì de guò Shèngdānjié.
Everyone was having a very happy Christmas.
2. 欢喜 huānxǐ joyful
一家人 欢欢喜喜 地 过 春节。
Yī jiā rén huānhuānxǐxǐ de guò Chūnjié.
The whole family spent a joyful Chinese New Year.
3. 欢聚 huānjù happy reunion
难得 有 机会 跟 老朋友 欢聚。
Nánde yǒu jīhuì gēn lǎopéngyou huānjù.
Old friends don't often get the chance to meet.
4. 欢乐 huānlè happy
国庆 的 时候, 北京 一 片 欢乐 的
Guóqīng de shíhòu, Běijīng yí piàn huānlè de
景象。
jǐngxiàng.
On National Day, Beijing is a scene of great joy.
5. 欢迎 huānyíng welcome
欢迎 你 到 北京 来。
Huānyíng nǐ dào Běijīng lái.
Welcome to Beijing.

Note the difference between 久 and 欠.

6 strokes

フ	又	又'	欠	欢	欢								

冷

lěng cold

The character combines *icy cold* 冫 and the phonetic 令 to give the sensation of *very cold*.

Radical: 冫 'ice'

Index # 7

Character components: 冫 + 令

Character configuration:

--	--

Compounds, sentences and meanings

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>1. 冷 lěng cold
今天 真 冷。
Jīntiān zhēn lěng.
<i>It's really cold today.</i></p> <p>2. 冷静 lěngjìng calm (of people)
请 你 冷静 一点儿。
Qǐng nǐ lěngjìng yídiǎnr.
<i>Please calm down.</i></p> <p>3. 冷水 lěngshuǐ unboiled water
喝 冷水 容易 得病。
Hē lěngshuǐ róngyì débìng.
<i>If you drink unboiled water, you're likely to get sick.</i></p> | <p>4. 冷落 lěngluò treat coldly
不要 冷落了 客人。
Búyào lěngluòle kèrén.
<i>Don't leave the guest out in the cold.</i></p> <p>5. 冷冰冰 lěngbīngbīng cold in manner
他 对 人 冷冰冰 的。
Tā duì rén lěngbīngbīng de.
<i>He has a cold manner.</i></p> |
|---|---|

The second dot lifts and has no bend.

7 strokes

丶	㇀	㇁	㇂	㇃	㇄	㇅	㇆	㇇	㇈	㇉	㇊	㇋	㇌

冬

dōng winter

The character was derived from a pictograph of two bags hanging from a rope with the two dots below representing ice, indicating that it was *cold*.

Radical: 夂 'top of 冬'

Index # 57

Character components: 夂 + 冫

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>1. 冬 dōng winter
 这 种 鸟 在 哪 里 过 冬?
 Zhè zhǒng niǎo zài nǎlǐ guòdōng?
 <i>Where do these birds go in winter?</i></p> <p>2. 冬天 dōngtiān winter
 上 海 的 冬 天 不 下 雪。
 Shànghǎi de dōngtiān bù xià xuě.
 <i>It doesn't snow in Shanghai in winter.</i></p> <p>3. 冬季 dōngjì winter
 上 海 的 冬 季 不 下 雪。
 Shànghǎi de dōngjì bù xià xuě.
 <i>It doesn't snow in Shanghai in winter.</i></p> | <p>4. 冬菇 dōnggū dried mushrooms
 我 喜 欢 吃 冬 菇。
 Wǒ xǐhuan chī dōnggū.
 <i>I like dried mushrooms.</i></p> <p>5. 冬装 dōngzhuāng winter fashion
 今 年 的 冬 装 好 看 极 了。
 Jīnnián de dōngzhuāng hǎokānjǐle.
 <i>This year's winter fashions are very pretty.</i></p> |
|---|---|

The last two dots end firmly.

5 strokes

ノ	夕	夂	冬	冬									

Quiz 22 (211–220)

A. Look at the 16-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and down the pinyin and meaning.

Word or phrase				Pinyin	Meaning		
多	过	时	间	(i)	多久	duō jiǔ	how much time?
久	北	已	经	(ii)			
还	来	京	南	(iii)			
冬	喜	欢	长	(iv)			

B. Refer to the characters in the 16-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin phrases into characters and check their English meaning in the Key.

(i)	Nǐ lái Běijīng duō jiǔ le?									
(ii)	Yījīng hěn cháng shíjiān le.									
(iii)	Nǐ xǐhuan Běijīng ma?									
(iv)	Hái hǎo, dōngtiān lěng yīdiǎnr.									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)

从来
来回
不久
已经
经常
经过
长大
长 jiǎng

grow up
the Yangtze River
all along
pass through
a return journey
not long
already
often

(ii)

时间
中间
fāng 间
喜欢
欢喜
欢 yīng
冷 shuǐ
冬天

be fond of
happy
unboiled water
time
winter
room
middle
welcome

海

hǎi sea

The character combines *water* 氵 and *every* 每 to suggest the idea that water always returns to the *sea*.

Radical: 氵 '3 drops of water'

Index # 32

Character components: 氵 + 每

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 海 hǎi sea

台湾 四面 环海。

Táiwān sìmiàn huánhǎi.

Taiwan is surrounded by sea.

2. 海拔 hǎibá above sea level

这里的 山 比较 高, 平均 海拔

Zhèlǐ de shān bǐjiào gāo, píngjūn hǎibá

sìqiān mǐ.

The mountains here are quite high, averaging
4000 meters above sea level.

3. 海边 hǎibiān seaside

我 常 去 海边 游泳。

Wǒ cháng qù hǎibiān yóuyóu.

I often go to the seaside to swim.

4. 海外 hǎiwài overseas

他是 海外 华侨。

Tā shì hǎiwài Huáqiáo.

He is an overseas Chinese.

5. 上海 Shànghǎi Shanghai

她是 上海人

Tā shì Shànghǎirén.

She's a native of Shanghai.

Write the horizontal stroke before the final two dots.

10 strokes

丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶			
丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶			
丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶			
丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶			
丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶			
丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶			
丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶			
丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶			
丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶			

夏

xià summer

The character was derived from a pictograph of a masked person dancing, perhaps in a *summer* festival.

Radical: 夂 'top of 冬'

Index # 57

Character components: 頁 + 夂

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 夏 xià summer
这种树冬夏常青。
Zhè zhǒng shù dōng xià cháng qīng.
This type of trees is evergreen. (Literally, winter summer always green)
2. 夏天 xiàtiān summer
北京的夏天比较热。
Běijīng de xiàtiān bǐjiào rè.
Summer in Beijing is quite hot.
3. 夏令时 xiàlǐngshí daylight-saving
明天晚上要调夏令时。
Míngtiān wǎnshang yào tiáo xiàlǐngshí.
Adjust the clock for daylight-saving time tomorrow night.
4. 夏令营 xiàlǐngyíng summer camp
这个暑假我参加了夏令营。
Zhè ge shǔjià wǒ cānjiāle xiàlǐngyíng.
This summer vacation I went to a summer camp.
5. 夏装 xiàzhuāng summer fashion
今年的夏装很好看。
Jīnnián de xiàzhuāng hěn hǎokàn.
The summer fashions this year are pretty.

Note the difference between 夂 and 又.

10 strokes

一	乚	丅	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇			

热

rè hot

熱

The character combines *grasp* 执 and *fire* 火 to suggest the sensation of heat. It means *hot*.

Radical: 火 '4 dots of fire'

Index # 71

Character components: 执 + 火

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 热 rè heat up
请把汤热一热。
Qǐng bǎ tāng rèyìrè.
Please heat up the soup.
2. 热带 rèdài the tropics
新加坡地处热带。
Xīnjiāpō dì chǔ rèdài.
Singapore is situated in the tropics.
3. 热点 rèdiǎn hot spot
那是个旅游热点。
Nà shì ge lǚyóu rèdiǎn.
That is a hot spot for tourists.
4. 热情 rèqíng enthusiasm
那个服务员对顾客很热情。
Nà ge fúwùyuán duì gùkè hěn rèqíng.
That waiter is friendly to the customers.
5. ...热 ...rè craze, fad
卡拉OK热遍及全中国。
Kǎlā'ōukēi-rè biànjí quán Zhōngguó.
The karaoke craze has spread all over China.

The first dot goes to the left, the rest go to the right.

10 strokes

一	丿	㇀	㇀	㇀	㇀	㇀	㇀	㇀	㇀			

较

jiào compare

較

The character combines *vehicle* 车 and *crossing* 交 possibly to suggest that careful *comparison* is necessary.

Radical: 车 ‘vehicle’

Index # 84

Character components: 车 + 交

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 较 jiào relatively
你的 汉语 有 较大 的 进步。
Nǐde Hànyǔ yǒu jiàodà de jìnbù.
You have made considerable progress in your Chinese.
2. 比较 bǐjiào comparatively
我 最近 比较 忙。
Wǒ zuìjìn bǐjiào máng.
I've been rather busy recently.
3. 相较 xiāngjiào compare
相较 实力, 我方 优于 对方。
Xiāngjiào shíli, wǒfāng yōuyú duìfāng.
Using our strengths to compare, we are better than our opponent.
4. 较量 jiàoliàng measure one's strength with
你 还是 别 跟 这个 小伙子 较量 了。
Nǐ háishì bié gēn zhè ge xiǎohuǒzi jiàoliàng le.
You'd be better off not to test your strength against this young guy.
5. 较为 jiàowéi comparatively
这 本 词典 较为 便宜。
Zhè běn cídiǎn jiàowéi piányi.
This dictionary is comparatively cheap.

The last stroke comes down from left to right.

10 strokes

一	乚	亠	车	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	较			

雨

yǔ rain

The character can be thought of as *heaven* 一, *clouds* 冂, and *rain falling* 灬. It means *rain*.

Radical: 雨 'rain'

Index # 172

Character components: 一 + 冂 + 灬

Character configuration: 

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 雨 yǔ rain

天气 预报 说 今天 有 雨。

Tiānqì yùbào shuō jīntiān yǒu yǔ.

Rain is forecast today.

2. 阵雨 zhènyǔ showers

今天 下午 有 阵雨。

Jīntiān xiàwǔ yǒu zhènyǔ.

There'll be showers this afternoon.

3. 下雨 xià yǔ rain

天气 预报 说 今天 下雨。

Tiānqì yùbào shuō jīntiān xià yǔ.

Rain is forecast today.

4. 雨季 yǔjì rainy season

五、六月 是 上海 的雨季。

Wǔ, Liùyuè shì Shànghǎi de yǔjì.

The time around May and June is the rainy season in Shanghai.

5. 雨伞 yǔsǎn umbrella

我 忘了 带 雨伞。

Wǒ wàngle dài yǔsǎn.

I forgot to bring my umbrella.

The dots come down firmly to the right.

8 strokes

一	冂	冂	雨	雨	雨	雨	雨					

游

yóu swim; tour

Full form

遊

When the phonetic 游 is combined with *water* 氵, it means *swim*. However, the same character is used as the simplified form for *tour* or *play* 遊 with the *movement* 辶 radical, as illustrated in examples 3, 4 and 5.

Radical: 氵 '3 drops of water'

Index # 32

Character components: 氵 + 方 + 子

Character configuration: 

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 游 yóu swim

这条河太宽，我游不过去。

Zhè tiáo hé tài kuān, wǒ yóu bu guòqu.

This river is too wide, I can't swim across it.

2. 游泳 yóuyóu swim

夏天 很多人去海边游泳。

Xiàtiān hěnduō rén qù hǎibiān yóuyóu.

Many people go to the seaside to swim in summer.

3. 游戏 yóuxì game

孩子们喜欢玩游戏。

Háizimen xǐhuan wán yóuxì.

Children love to play games.

4. 游人 yóurén tourist, traveler

游人止步。

Yóurén zhǐbù

No entrance. (literally, travelers stop)

5. 游览 yóulǎn go sight-seeing

明天我们去游览故宫。

Míngtiān wǒmen qù yóulǎn Gùgōng.

Tomorrow we are touring the Imperial Palace.

The last stroke of 氵 goes up.

12 strokes

丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	

泳

yǒng swim

The character combines *water* 氵 and the phonetic 永 to give the idea of a style of swimming. It means *swim*.

Radical: 氵 ‘3 drops of water’

Index # 32

Character components: 氵 + 永

Character configuration:

--	--

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 泳 yǒng swim

夏天 很多人 去 海边 游泳。

Xiàtiān hěnduō rén qù hǎibiān yóuyǒng.

Many people go to the seaside to swim in summer.
2. 游泳 yóuyǒng swim

夏天 很多人 去 海边 游泳。

Xiàtiān hěnduō rén qù hǎibiān yóuyǒng.

Many people go to the seaside to swim in summer.
3. 蛙泳 wāyǒng breast stroke

中国 赢过 蛙泳 金牌。

Zhōngguó yíngguo wāyǒng jīnpái.

China had won a gold medal for breast stroke.
4. 自由泳 zìyóuyǒng free style

我的 自由泳 游得 不好。

Wǒde zìyóuyǒng yóude bù hǎo.

My freestyle is not very good.
5. 泳道 yǒngdào lane (in swimming)

他 游 的 是 第三 泳道。

Tā yóu de shì dìsān yǒngdào.

He swam in the third lane.

The last stroke tapers off to the right. 8 strokes

丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶					

池

chí pool, pond

The character combines *water* 氵 and the phonetic 也 to suggest a *pool* or *pond*.

Radical: 氵 ‘3 drops of water’

Index # 32

Character components: 氵 + 也

Character configuration:

--	--

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 池 chí pond

我家后院里有一个养鱼池。

Wǒ jiā hòuyuàn lǐ yǒu yí ge yǎngyúchí.

We have a fishpond in our backyard.

2. 游泳池 yóuyǒngchí swimming pool

宾馆里有游泳池。

Bīnguǎn lǐ yǒu yóuyǒngchí.

There's a swimming pool in the hotel.

3. 水池 shuǐchí sink

我在水池洗菜。

Wǒ zài shuǐchí xǐ cài.

I washed the vegetables in the sink.

4. 浴池 yùchí public bathhouse

他喜欢去浴池洗澡。

Tā xǐhuan qù yùchí xǐzǎo

He likes to go to the bathhouse to bathe.

5. 池塘 chí táng pond

池塘里种了荷花儿。

Chítáng lǐ zhòngle héhuār.

There are water lilies in the pond.

The last stroke ends with a hook.

6 strokes

丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶							

方

fāng direction

The character came from the sketch of a plough showing a handle on both sides of the shaft. Thus, it suggests the idea of extension to both sides or *direction*.

Radical: 方 'direction'

Index # 74

Character component: 方

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 方 fāng method
他 母亲 教导 有 方。
Tā mǔqīn jiàodǎo yǒu fāng.
His mother taught him the right way to do it.
2. 方便 fāngbiàn convenient
什么 时候 方便, 什么 时候 来。
Shénme shíhòu fāngbiàn, shénme shíhòu lái.
Drop in whenever it's convenient.
3. 方向 fāngxiàng direction
他 往 学校 的 方向 走了。
Tā wǎng xuéxiào de fāngxiàng zǒu le.
He went in the direction of the school.
4. 方法 fāngfǎ method
这个 学习 方法 很好。
Zhè ge xuéxí fāngfǎ hěn hǎo.
This is a good study method.
5. 方面 fāngmiàn aspect
应该 考虑 各 方面 的意见。
Yīnggāi kǎolǜ gè fāngmiàn de yìjiàn.
One should consider opinions from different quarters.

The last stroke bends and ends with a hook.

4 strokes

丶	一	ㄥ	方									

Quiz 23 (221–230)

- A. Look at the 16-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

Word or phrase				Pinyin	Meaning		
游	多	下	雨	(i)	游 泳 池	yóuyǒngchí	swimming pool
泳	比	较	过	(ii)			
池	热	地	万	(iii)			
夏	常	方	海	(iv)			

- B. Refer to the characters in the 16-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin phrases into characters and check their English meaning in the Key.

(i)	Shànghǎi xiàtiān rè bu rè?									
(ii)	Bǐjiào rè, búguò cháng xiāyǔ.									
(iii)	Shànghǎi yóuyǒngchí duō bu duō?									
(iv)	Bùshǎo, hěnduō dìfāng dōu yǒu.									

- C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)	海边	direction	(ii)	常见	rainy season
	海外	seaside		常常	common
	夏 lǐng 时	aspect		下雨	swim
	热 qīng	comparatively		雨 jì	game
	比较	overseas		zhèn 雨	tour
	方 xiāng	summer time		游泳	often
	方 fā	enthusiastic		游 xī	rain
	方面	method		游 lǎn	showers

周

zhōu week

週

The character is used both as a full character (examples 4 and 5), and the simplified form for 週. The full form combines *field* 周 and *movement* 辶 to suggest the idea of making a circuit. It came to mean *cycle of time*, and then *week*.

Radical: 冂 'border'

Index # 16

Character components: 冂 + 土 + 口

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 周 zhōu week

上周 我有事儿, 没去跳舞。

Shàngzhōu wǒ yǒu shìr, méi qù tiàowǔ.

Last week I was busy, so I didn't go dancing.

2. 周日 zhōurì Sunday

周日 晚上 我都 没空儿。

Zhōurì wǎnshang wǒ dōu méi kòngr.

I'm always busy on Sundays.

3. 周年 zhōunián anniversary

今天 是我 结婚 二十五 周年 纪念。

Jīntiān shì wǒ jiéhūn èrshíwǔ zhōunián jìniàn.

Today is my 25th wedding anniversary.

4. 周身 zhōushēn all over the body

今天 我觉得 周身 疼痛。

Jīntiān wǒ juéde zhōushēn téngtòng.

Today, my whole body aches.

5. 周围 zhōuwéi around

这里 周围 环境 都很 美。

Zhèlǐ zhōuwéi huánjìng dōu hěn měi.

The surroundings here are beautiful.

The second stroke ends with a hook.

8 strokes

丿	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏						

末

mò end

The character is a phonetic used as a character. It means *end*. It is important to write the second horizontal stroke shorter to avoid confusion with wèi 未 'not yet'.

Radical: 木 'tree'

Index # 81

Character components: 一 + 木

Character configuration: 

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 末 mò end
今天 是 学期 最 末 一天。
Jīntiān shì xuéqī zuì mò yì tiān.
Today is the last day of the semester.
2. 周末 zhōumò weekend
周末 我 一般 都 出 去 玩 儿。
Zhōumò wǒ yībān dōu chūqu wánr.
I generally go out during the weekends.
3. 末期 mòqī last phase
我 是 第 二 次 世 界 大 战 末 期 出 生 的。
Wǒ shì dì'èr cì shìjiè dàzhàn mòqī chūshēng de.
I was born during the last stage of the Second World War.
4. 末班车 mòbānchē last train/bus
末班车 午 夜 十 二 点 一 刻 开。
Mòbānchē wǔyè shí'èr diǎn yí kè kāi.
The last bus leaves at 12:15 a.m.
5. 末日 mòrì doomsday
核 子 战 争 将 导 致 世 界 末 日。
Hézi zhànzhēng jiāng dǎozhì shìjiè mòrì.
Nuclear wars will result in the end of the world.

The second stroke is shorter.

5 strokes

一	=	丰	才	末									

活

huó live

The character combines *water* 氵 and *tongue* 舌 to symbolize *life*. It came to mean *active* or *vigorous*.

Radical: 氵 '3 drops of water'

Index # 32

Character components: 氵 + 舌

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 活 huó live

我爸爸 活到 八十五岁。

Wǒ bàba huódào bāshíwǔ suì.

My father lived to be eighty-five.

2. 活动 huódòng activity

这个 周末 你 有 什么 活动?

Zhè ge zhōumò nǐ yǒu shénme huódòng?

What activities have you planned for this weekend?

3. 活力 huólì energy

这个 小伙子 充满 活力。

Zhè ge xiǎohuǒzi chōngmǎn huólì.

This young man is full of energy.

4. 活泼 huópō lively

这个 孩子 真 活泼。

Zhè ge háizi zhēn huópō.

This child is really lively.

5. 生活 shēnghuó life

在 中国 生活 要 用 汉语。

Zài Zhōngguó shēnghuó yào yòng Hànyǔ.

You have to use Chinese if you live in China.

The fourth stroke sweeps down from right to left.

9 strokes

丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	活	活				

动

dòng move

動

The full form combines *strength* 力 and *heavy* 重 to express the idea of *to budge something heavy* or *to move*.

Radical: 力 'strength'

Index # 31

Character components: 云 + 力

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 动 dòng move
这 东西 一个 人 拿不动。
Zhè dōngxi yí ge rén nábudòng.
This thing can't be moved by one person.
2. 动身 dòngshēn set out on a journey
我们 明天 一 早就 动身。
Wǒmen míngtiān yí zǎo jiù dòngshēn.
We'll leave early tomorrow.
3. 动人 dòngrén moving, touching
这个 电影 故事 很 动人。
Zhè ge diànyǐng gùshi hěn dòngrén.
The plot of this movie is very touching.
4. 动听 dòngtīng pleasant to listen to
她 唱歌 很 动听。
Tā chànggē hěn dòngtīng.
She sings beautifully.
5. 动物园 dòngwùyuán zoo
北京 动物园 有 大熊猫。
Běijīng Dòngwùyuán yǒu dàxióngmāo.
There are pandas in Beijing Zoo.

The last stroke tapers off.

6 strokes

一	二	云	云	动	动								

爱

ài love

愛

The full form combines *hand* 手, *cover* 冫, *heart* 心 and *stop* 夊 to express the idea of someone standing still while cherishing *love* in his heart. The simplified form uses the idea of *companionship* 友 to express *love*.

Radical: 爪 ‘claw’

Character components: 爪 + 冫 + 友

Index # 102

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 爱 ài love

他 爱上 她了。

Tā àishàng tā le.

He has fallen in love with her.

2. 爱情 àiqíng love

他们 之间 已经 有了 很 深 的 爱情

Tāmen zhījiān yǐjīng yǒule hěn shēn de àiqíng
了。

le.

They are deeply in love.

3. 爱护 àihù take good care of

请 爱护 公物。

Qǐng àihù gōngwù.

Please take care of public property.

4. 爱惜 àixī value highly and use prudently

他 不 知道 爱惜 东西。

Tā bù zhīdao àixī dōngxi.

He doesn't know how to look after things.

5. 爱好 àihào hobby

你 有 什么 爱好?

Nǐ yǒu shénme àihào?

What hobbies do you have?

The last stroke firms and tapers off.

10 strokes

一	丿	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	爱			

睡

shuì sleep

The character combines *eyes* 目 and the phonetic 垂 which means *hang down* to suggest the idea that when the eyelids droop, you go to *sleep*.

Radical: 目 'eye'

Index # 118

Character components: 目 + 垂

Character configuration: 

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 睡 shuì sleep

昨晚 我 睡了 八 小时。

Zuówǎn wǒ shuìle bā xiǎoshí.

I slept for eight hours last night.

2. 睡觉 shuìjiào sleep

该 睡觉 了。

Gāi shuìjiào le.

It's time to go to sleep.

3. 午睡 wǔshuì afternoon nap

中国人 有 午睡 的 习惯。

Zhōngguó rén yǒu wǔshuì de xíguàn.

Chinese have the habit of taking an afternoon nap.

4. 睡眠 shuìmián sleep

医生 说 我 睡眠 不足。

Yīshēng shuō wǒ shuìmián bùzú.

The doctor said that I don't have enough sleep.

5. 睡衣 shuìyī pyjamas

我 忘了 带 睡衣。

Wǒ wàngle dài shuìyī.

I forgot to bring my pyjamas.

The last horizontal stroke is shorter.

13 strokes

丨	冂	月	月	目	𠂆	𠂆	𠂆	𠂆	𠂆	𠂆	𠂆	𠂆

觉

jiào/jué sleep; feel

覺

The full form combines *feelings* 覺 and *see or perceive* 見 to mean *feel*. It is pronounced as *jué*. Its other meaning is *sleep*, pronounced as *jiào*.

Radical: 见 'see'

Index # 93

Character components: 𠃉 + 见

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>1. 觉 jiào sleep
一觉醒来已经十点半了。
Yī jiào xǐng lái yǐjīng shídiǎnbàn le.
When I woke up it was already 10:30.</p> <p>2. 睡懒觉 shuì lǎnjiào sleep in
周末我喜欢睡懒觉。
Zhōumò wǒ xǐhuan shuì lǎnjiào.
At the weekend, I like to sleep in.</p> <p>3. 睡午觉 shuì wǔjiào afternoon nap
中国人有睡午觉的习惯。
Zhōngguó rén yǒu shuì wǔjiào de xíguàn.
Chinese have the habit of taking an afternoon nap.</p> | <p>4. 觉得 juéde feel
我觉得我的中文进步了。
Wǒ juéde wǒde Zhōngwén jìnbù le.
I feel that my Chinese has improved.</p> <p>5. 感觉 gǎnjué perception
这只是我个人的感觉。
Zhè zhǐ shì wǒ gèrén de gǎnjué.
This is only my personal feeling.</p> |
|--|---|

The last stroke is a vertical-bend hook.

9 strokes

丶	㇀	㇁	㇂	㇃	㇄	㇅	㇆	觉				

呢

ne [particle]

The character combines *mouth* 口 and *the phonetic* 尼 to give the idea of a *question particle*.

Radical: 口 ‘mouth’

Index # 50

Character components: 口 + 尼

Character configuration:

--	--

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 呢 ne particle (rhetorical question)

我怎么能不记得呢?

Wǒ zěnmē néng bú jìde ne?

How could I forget this?

2. 呢 ne particle (declarative sentence)

远得很呢。

Yuǎn de hěn ne.

It's a long way.

3. 呢 ne particle (to mark continuous action)

他还在睡觉呢。

Tā hái zài shuìjiào ne.

He's still asleep.

4. 呢 ne particle (to ask a return question)

我叫大伟，你呢?

Wǒ jiào Dàwēi, nǐ ne?

My name is David, what's yours?

5. 呢 ne particle (to mark a pause)

不下雨呢，就去；下雨呢，就不去。

Bú xiàyǔ ne, jiù qù; xiàyǔ ne, jiù bú qù.

If it doesn't rain, we'll go; if it rains, we won't go.

The last stroke sweeps from right to left.

8 strokes

丨	㇀	口	𠂆	𠂇	𠂈	𠂉	呢					

运

yùn transport

運

The full form combines *war chariot* 軍 and *movement* 辶 to mean *carry people in a vehicle* or *transport*. The simplified form uses the simpler phonetic 云.

Radical: 辶 ‘movement’

Index # 38

Character components: 云 + 辶

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 运 yùn luck

祝 你 好 运!

Zhù nǐ hǎo yùn!

Good luck!

2. 运气 yùnqì luck

我 最近 运气 不太好。

Wǒ zuìjìn yùnqì bú tài hǎo.

I've had some bad luck recently.

3. 幸运 xìngyùn fortunate

我 觉得 我 很 幸运。

Wǒ juéde wǒ hěn xìngyùn.

I think that I'm very fortunate.

4. 运动 yùndòng sport

游泳 是 我 喜爱的 运动。

Yóuyóǒng shì wǒ xǐ'ài de yùndòng.

Swimming is my favorite sport.

5. 运用 yùnyòng utilize

她 把 学过 的 东西 运用 在

Tā bǎ xuéguo de dōngxi yùnyòng zài

生活 里。

shēnghuó li.

She applies what she learnt to everyday situations.

End the last stroke of 云 firmly.

7 strokes

一	二	云	云	云	运	运						

得

dé/de/děi obtain; [particle]; must

The character is pronounced *dé* when it means *obtain*; in the neutral tone *de* when it functions as *verbal particle*; and *děi* when it means *must*.

Radical: 彳 ‘double person’

Index # 54

Character components: 彳 + 日 + 寸

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 得 dé obtain
他 考试 得了第一名。
Tā kǎoshì déle dìyī míng.
He came first in the exam.
2. verb + 得 verb + de verbal particle
她 乒乓球 打得 不错。
Tā pīngpāngqiú dǎde búcuò.
She plays table tennis quite well.
3. 得意 déyì proud of oneself
我 对自己的 成绩 感到 得意。
Wǒ duì zìjǐ de chéngjī gǎndào déyì.
I was proud of my results.
4. 得罪 dézuì offend
我的 话 把 他 给 得罪了。
Wǒde huà bǎ tā gěi dézuìle.
My words offended him.
5. 得 děi certainly will
要不 快 走, 我们 就 得 迟到了。
Yàobù kuài zǒu, wǒmen jiù děi chídào le.
We'll be late if we don't hurry.

The second horizontal stroke is longer.

11 strokes

丶	㇀	彳	彳	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	得	得		

Quiz 24 (231–240)

A. Look at the 16-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

					Word or phrase	Pinyin	Meaning
欢	活	喜	呢	(i)	活 动	huódòng	activity/activities
运	动	周	末	(ii)			
步	睡	觉	跑	(iii)			
和	泳	游	爱	(iv)			

B. Refer to the characters in the 16-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin phrases into characters and check their English meaning in the Key.

(i)	Zhōumò nǐ yǒu shénme huódòng?								
(ii)	Zhōumò wǒ ài shuì lǎnjiào.								
(iii)	Nǐ xǐhuan shénme yùndòng?								
(iv)	Wǒ xǐhuan yóuyǒng hé pǎobù.								

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)		(ii)	
周年	zoo	睡午觉	offend
周日	pleasant to listen to	睡 lǎn 觉	sports
生活	touching	睡衣	luck
动人	anniversary	觉得	sleep in
动 tīng	spouse	gǎn 觉	afternoon nap
动 wù 园	hobby	运动	perception
爱人	living	运 qì	pyjamas
爱好 (pron. hào)	Sunday	得 zuì	feel

kě can, may

Character configuration: ☐

He's most likely to be home by now.

一	丁	可	可	可
---	---	---	---	---

以

yǐ with

The character combines *gather* 彳 and *people* 人 to represent the idea of *gathering people and their employment*. Later it came to mean *use* or *according to*.

Radical: 人 'person'

Index # 18

Character components: 彳 + 人

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 以 yǐ with, by means of
我们 不 应该 以 貌 取人。
Wǒmen bù yīnggāi yǐ mào qǔ rén.
We should not judge people solely by their appearance.
2. 以便 yǐbiàn in order to
作好 准备, 以便 明天 一 早
Zuòhǎo zhǔnbèi, yǐbiàn míngtiān yī zǎo
动身。
dòngshēn.
Get ready so that we can start early tomorrow.
3. 以后 yǐhòu afterwards
以后 你 会 有 机会 去的。
Yǐhòu nǐ huì yǒu jīhuì qù de.
You will have a chance to go later.
4. 以前 yǐqián prior to, former
她 是 我 以前 的 同事。
Tā shì wǒ yǐqián de tóngshì.
She's a former colleague of mine.
5. 以为 yǐwéi consider
他 以为 那样 做 比较 好。
Tā yǐwéi nànyàng zuò bǐjiào hǎo.
He thinks it's better to do it that way.

Both dots finish firmly.

4 strokes

彳	彳	以	以									

共

gòng together

The character represents the idea of two hands lifting an object. Thus, it came to mean *together*.

Radical: 八 'eight'

Index # 17

Character components: 卅 + 八

Character configuration:

Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 共 gòng public

今天 很 高兴 能 有 机会 跟 老

Jīntiān hěn gāoxìng néng yǒu jīhuì gēn lǎo

朋友 共 聚一堂。

péngyou gòng jù yì táng.

I'm very happy to have the opportunity to meet with old friends.

2. 共同 gòngtóng common

他们 之间 没有 共同 的 语言。

Tāmen zhījiān méiyǒu gòngtóng de yǔyán.

They don't have a common language.

3. 一共 yìgòng altogether

你们 一共 多少 人?

Nǐmen yìgòng duōshao rén?

How many people are there altogether in your group?

4. 公共 gōnggòng public

请 不要 在 公共 场所 吸烟。

Qǐng bùyào zài gōnggòng chǎngsuǒ xīyān.

Please don't smoke in public places.

5. 共和国 gònghéguó republic

中华 人民 共和国。

Zhōnghuá Rénmín Gònghéguó.

The People's Republic of China.

The last stroke ends firmly.

6 strokes

一	十	卅	卅	共	共								

汽

qī steam

The character combines *water* 氵 and *gas* 气 to suggest the idea of *watery air* or *vapor*.

Radical: 氵 '3 drops of water'

Index # 32

Character components: 氵 + 气

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 汽 qī vapor

汽船 用 蒸汽 开动。

Qìchuán yòng zhēngqì kāidòng.

Steamships are driven by steam.

2. 汽油 qìyóu petrol

最近 汽油 涨价 了。

Zuìjìn qìyóu zhǎngjià le.

Recently the price of gasoline has risen.

3. 汽水 qìshuǐ soft drinks

这 是 什么 汽水?

Zhè shì shénme qìshuǐ?

What is this soft drink?

4. 汽车 qìchē automobile

路上 有 很多 汽车。

Lùshang yǒu hěnduō qìchē.

There are lots of cars on the road.

5. 汽船 qìchuán steamship

现在 很少 有 汽船 了。

Xiànzài hěnshǎo yǒu qìchuán le.

Nowadays steamships are rare.

The last stroke slants to the right.

7 strokes

丶	丿	㇀	㇀	㇀	㇀	汽							

或

huò or; perhaps

The character combines *spear* 戈, *border* 口 and *approximation* 一 to suggest the idea that the border is an approximation. Thus, it came to mean *perhaps*.

Radical: 戈 'spear'

Index # 85

Character components: 戈 + 口 + 一

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 或 huò or
无论 唱歌 或 跳舞, 她 都 行。
Wúlùn chàngē huò tiàowǔ, tā dōu xíng.
She is good at both singing and dancing.
2. 或是 huòshì or
无论 唱歌 或是 跳舞, 她 都 行。
Wúlùn chàngē huòshì tiàowǔ, tā dōu xíng.
She is good at both singing and dancing.
3. 或者 huòzhě either ... or
你 早上 或者 下午 来 都可以。
Nǐ zǎoshang huòzhě xiàwǔ lái dōu kěyǐ.
You may come either in the morning or in the afternoon.
4. 或许 huòxǔ perhaps, maybe
他 或许 没有 赶上 火车。
Tā huòxǔ méiyǒu gǎnshàng huǒchē.
Perhaps he has missed the train.

The bottom horizontal stroke goes up slightly.

8 strokes

一	亅	𠂇	𠂇	𠂇	或	或	或					

者

zhě -er, -ist

This character functions as a particle. It is often used after a verb, adjective or noun to indicate a class of persons or things. In 或者, it means *perhaps*.

Radical: 曰 'speech'

Index # 91

Character components: 耂 + 曰

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 者 zhě one of those who; the thing or things which
独身主义者。
Dúshēnzhǔyìzhě.
One who prefers to be single.
2. 作者 zuòzhě author
他是这本书的作者。
Tā shì zhè běn shū de zuòzhě.
He's the author of this book.
3. 读者 dúzhě reader
这本书的读者很广。
Zhè běn shū de dúzhě hěn guǎng.
This book has a wide readership.
4. 记者 jìzhě reporter
他是当记者的。
Tā shì dāng jìzhě de.
He is a reporter.
5. 旁观者 pángguānzhě onlooker
旁观者清。
Pángguānzhě qīng.
The spectator sees most clearly.

The top horizontal stroke is shorter.

8 strokes

一	十	土	𠂔	耂	者	者	者					

火

huǒ fire

The character is a pictograph of a blazing flame.

Radical: 火 'fire'

Index # 75

Character component: 火

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 火 huǒ fire

不要 让 小孩子 玩火。

Búyào ràng xiǎoháizi wánhuǒ.

Don't let children play with fire.

2. 火车 huǒchē train

她 明天 坐 火车 去 西安。

Tā míngtiān zuò huǒchē qù Xī'ān.

She will be taking a train to Xian tomorrow.

3. 火柴 huǒchái matches

请问, 有 没有 火柴?

Qǐngwèn, yǒu méiyǒu huǒchái?

Excuse me, do you have a match?

4. 火候 huǒhou duration and degree of heating

炒菜 的 时候, 掌握 火候 很

Chǎocài de shíhou, zhǎngwò huǒhou hěn

重要。

zhòngyào.

Heat control is very important in stir-frying.

5. 火气 huǒqì temper

他的 火气 很大。

Tāde huǒqì hěn dà.

He has a bad temper.

The last stroke tapers off.

4 strokes

丶	㇏	㇏	火										

站

zhàn stand

The character combines *stand* 立 and *occupy* 占 to express the meaning of *stand* or *station*.

Radical: 立 'stand'

Index # 111

Character components: 立 + 占

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 站 zhàn train/bus stop

我 下个 站 下车。

Wǒ xià ge zhàn xiàchē.

I get off at the next stop.

2. 火车站 huǒchēzhàn train station

我 家离 火车站 不 远。

Wǒ jiā lí huǒchēzhàn bù yuǎn.

My house is not far from the railway station.

3. 站立 zhānlì be on one's feet

他 腿 疼， 不能 站立。

Tā tuǐ téng, bùnéng zhānlì.

His leg was so sore that he couldn't stand up.

4. 站稳 zhānwěn come to a stop

等 车 站稳了 再下。

Děng chē zhānwěnlè zài xià.

Wait till the bus/train stops completely before getting out.

5. 站住 zhānzhù stop, halt

风 刮得 人 都 站不住 了。

Fēng guāde rén dōu zhānbuzhù le.

The wind was so strong that you could hardly stand.

The fifth stroke lifts slightly.

10 strokes

丶	㇀	㇁	㇂	立	𠂔	𠂕	𠂖	站	站			

知

zhī know

The character combines *arrow* 矢 and *mouth* 口 to suggest words flying like arrows from the mouth. To speak fast means the speaker *knows* the subject well.

Radical: 矢 ‘arrow’

Index # 123

or 口 ‘mouth’

Index # 50

Character components: 矢 + 口

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. 知 zhī be aware of, know
这话不知是谁说的。
Zhè huà bù zhī shì shéi/shuí shuō de.
I don't know who said this.
2. 知道 zhīdao know
你知道邮局在哪儿吗?
Nǐ zhīdao yóujú zài nǎr ma?
Do you know where the post office is?
3. 知己 zhījī bosom friend
人生难得有个知己。
Rénshēng nándé yǒu ge zhījī.
It is difficult to find a true friend.
4. 知音 zhīyīn an understanding friend
难得有个知音。
Nándé yǒu ge zhīyīn.
It is difficult to find someone who really understands you.
5. 知识 zhīshi knowledge
王老师的知识渊博。
Wáng lǎoshī de zhīshi yuānbó.
Teacher Wang is very knowledgeable.

The fifth stroke ends firmly.

8 strokes

丶	㇀	㇁	㇂	㇃	知	知						

道

dào road

The character combines *movement* 辶 and *main* 首 to suggest going along a main path. It means *road*.

Radical: 辶 'movement'

Index # 38

Character components: 首 + 辶

Character configuration:



Compounds, sentences and meanings

1. **道 dào** way, method
他对 养生 之道 很有 研究。
Tā duì yǎngshēng zhī dào hěn yǒu yánjiū.
He's very knowledgeable about staying healthy.
2. **道路 dàolù** road
走 前人 没有 走过 的道路。
Zǒu qiánrén méiyǒu zǒuguò de dàolù.
Explore paths none have taken before.
3. **道理 dàoli** reason
你的 话 很有 道理。
Nǐde huà hěn yǒu dàoli.
What you said is quite reasonable.
4. **道歉 dàoqiān** apologize
我 得 向 你 道歉。
Wǒ děi xiàng nǐ dàoqiān.
I owe you an apology.
5. **道义 dàoyì** morality and justice
我们 应该 给他 道义 上 的支持。
Wǒmen yīnggāi gěi tā dàoyì shàng de zhīchí.
We should give him moral support.

The top horizontal stroke is longer.

12 strokes

丶	㇀	㇀	㇀	㇀	㇀	㇀	㇀	㇀	㇀	㇀	㇀	㇀

Quiz 25 (241–250)

A. Look at the 16-character grid and CIRCLE words or phrases. They can be written horizontally or vertically. Look at the circled characters in the Key if unsure. COPY the word or phrase next to the grid and write the pinyin and meaning.

Word or phrase				Pinyin	Meaning		
在	儿	哪	火	(i)	火 车 站	huǒchēzhàn	train station
共	公	汽	车	(ii)			
知	道	或	站	(iii)			
可	以	者	也	(iv)			

B. Refer to the characters in the 16-character grid above and CONVERT the pinyin phrases into characters and check their English meaning in the Key.

(i)	Dào Zhōngguó Fāndiàn zěnmē zǒu?									
(ii)	Kěyǐ zuò gōnggòngqìchē qù.									
(iii)	Huòzhě zuò huǒchē yě kěyǐ.									
(iv)	Wǒ zhīdao chēzhàn zài nǎr.									

C. Match the Chinese words with their English meaning.

(i)	可爱	altogether	(ii)	汽车	gasoline
	可能	know		汽 yóu	railway station
	以前	reason		汽 shuǐ	automobile
	公共	cute		或 xǔ	temper
	一共	apologize		作者	soft drinks
	知道	possible		火 chāi	matches
	道 li	before		火 qì	perhaps, maybe
	道 qiàn	public		火车站	author, writer

CHARACTER BUILDING 5 (201-250)

A. Memorize each of the following radicals and their English names. As a review exercise, write the pinyin and meaning of each example.

1. [一] 'horizontal stroke'
来 () ; 万 ()
面 ()
2. [丨] 'vertical stroke'
北 () ;
3. [丿] 'downward-left stroke'
久 () ; 长 () ;
4. [㇀] 'top of 六'
京 () ; 就 ()
5. [十] 'ten'
南 () ; 直 () ;
6. [八] 'eight'
共 () ; 典 () ;
前 () ; 公 ()
7. [人] 'person'
从 () ; 以 () ;
8. [亻] 'upright person'
住 () ; 作 () ;
9. [又] 'again'
欢 () ; 对 () ;
10. [力] 'strength'
动 () ; 助 () ;
11. [氵] '3 drops of water'
游 () ; 泳 () ;
池 () ; 海 () ;
活 () ; 汽 () ;
12. [门] 'door'
间 () ; 问 ()
13. [辶] 'movement'
运 () ; 道 () ;
14. [土] 'earth'
坐 () ; 地 () ;

15. [口] 'mouth'
呢 () ; 和 () ;
可 () .
16. [巾] 'napkin'
常 () ; 帮 () .
17. [夂] 'top of 夂'
冬 () ; 夏 () .
18. [纟] 'silk'
经 () ; 练 () ;
19. [灬] '4 dots of fire'
热 () ; 点 () .
20. [方] 'direction'
方 () ; 旁 () .
21. [木] 'wood'
末 () ; 本 () ;
22. [车] 'vehicle'
车 () ; 较 () .
23. [戈] 'spear'
或 () ; 我 () .
24. [见] 'see'
觉 () ; 见 () .

B. Write the pinyin and meaning against the characters classified under the following radicals.

- | | |
|--|-------|
| 1. [冫] 'ice' | 冷 () |
| 2. [冂] 'three-sided frame, closed top' | 周 () |
| 3. [刂] 'upright knife' | 到 () |
| 4. [士] 'scholar' | 喜 () |
| 5. [己] 'self' | 已 () |
| 6. [火] 'fire' | 火 () |
| 7. [曰] 'speech' | 者 () |
| 8. [爪] 'claw' | 爱 () |
| 9. [立] 'stand' | 站 () |
| 10. [目] 'eye' | 睡 () |
| 11. [矢] 'arrow' | 知 () |
| 12. [雨] 'rain' | 雨 () |

C. Write the pinyin and meaning against the characters which share the following components. (Note that these components are not necessarily used as radicals.)

1. [也] 池 () ; 地 () .
2. [匕] 老 () ; 北 () .
3. [日] 间 () ; 晚 () .
4. [友] 友 () ; 爱 () ;

REVIEW 5 (201-250)

The following are words and phrases classified under parts of speech. Write the pinyin and meaning.

Nouns

地方 () ; 地下 () ;
 地铁 () ; 铁路 () ;
 车 () ; 汽车 () ;
 火车 () ; 火车站 () ;
 北方 () ; 南方 () ;
 时间 () ; 冬天 () ;
 海边 () ; 海外 () ;
 夏天 () ; 泳道 () ;
 游泳池 () ; 方面 () ;
 周 () ; 周日 () ;
 周末 () ; 周年 () ;
 末期 () ; 活动 () ;
 生活 () ; 爱好 () ;
 爱人 () ; 午睡 () ;
 运动 () ; 汽油 () ;
 作者 () ; 读者 () ;
 站 () ; 道路 () ;
 知识 () .

Proper nouns 北京 () ; 南京 () ;
 东京 () ; 上海 () ;

Verbs

住 () ; 到 () ;
 到期 () ; 坐 () ;
 来 () ; 经过 () ;
 长大 () ; 喜爱 () ;

喜欢 () ; 下雨 () ;
 游泳 () ; 活 () ;
 爱 () ; 睡觉 () ;
 觉得 () ; 知道 () .

Auxiliary verbs 可以 () .

Adjectives 喜欢 () ; 热 () ;
 常见 () ; 动人 () ;
 可爱 () ; 到家 () ;
 公共 () ; 公用 () .

Location words 南边 () ; 中间 () ;
 前面 () ; 后面 () ;

Time words (Adverbs) 久 () ; 不久 () ;
 以前 () ; 以后 () .

Adverbs 从前 () ; 从来 () ;
 已经 () ; 经常 () ;
 常常 () ; 比较 () ;

Conjunction 和 () ; 以便 () ;
 或 () ; 或者 () ;

Prepositions 从 () ; 从...到 () .

Particles 呢 () .

WORD/SENTENCE PUZZLE 5

Find and CIRCLE words, phrases or sentences hidden in the puzzle. They can be found horizontally from left to right or vertically. The lines across and down are indicated by numbers. Write down the meaning next to the pinyin. The first one is done for you.

ACROSS (left to right)

2. Wǒ juéde wǒde Zhōngwén jìnbù le.

I think my Chinese has improved.

6. Huǒchē zài tiělù shàng zǒu.

7. qìchēzhàn.

8. dúzhě.

9. (i) Zhōumò huódòng tài duō le.

9. (ii) xiâyǔ

11. cōnglái

13. Zhè zhī mǎo hěn kě'ài.

DOWN

1. yì zhōunián.

2. Wǒ chāng qù yóuyǒng.

3. (i) shuìjiào

3. (ii) huódào yībǎi-líng-yī

4. huǒchē

5. Wǒ jiā lí huǒchēzhàn bú tài yuǎn.

7. (i) zhōngjiān

7. (ii) dìtiě

9. Nǐ zǎoshang huòzhě xiàwǔ lái dōu kěyǐ.

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
1	买	西	睡	旁	早	看	见	做	起	母	明
2	每	我	觉	得	我	的	中	文	进	步	了
3	东	常	亲	它	家	旁	间	知	工	共	公
4	买	去	城	边	离	吃	面	条	你	期	进
5	起	游	呢	和	火	北	地	京	早	到	道
6	走	泳	南	火	车	在	铁	路	上	走	面
7	床	亲	汽	车	站	典	明	毛	或	在	现
8	一	者	方	比	不	睡	爱	读	者	经	长
9	周	末	活	动	太	多	了	晚	下	雨	饭
10	年	觉	到	岁	远	到	坐	早	午	就	久
11	卖	亲	一	池	住	冷	冬	从	来	已	做
12	往	能	百	离	太	狗	钱	路	都	店	面
13	千	用	零	远	这	只	猫	很	可	爱	现
14	时	街	一	较	夏	还	大	欢	以	喜	往

Alphabetical Index

A

ài	爱	235.1
àihào	爱好	235.5
àihù	爱护	235.3
àiqíng	爱情	235.4
àixī	爱惜	235.5

B

bā	八	8.1
bāchéng	八成	8.2
bāzhé	八折	8.3
bà	爸	65.1
bāba	爸爸	65.2
ba	吧	159.1
... ba, ...ba,	... 吧, ... 吧	159.5
bǎi	百	147.1
bǎifēndiǎn	百分点	147.3
bǎifēnzhībǎi	百分之百	147.2
bǎifēnzhīsānshí	百分之三十	105.5
bǎihuò	百货	147.4
bǎiwàn	百万	147.5/155.2
bàinián	拜年	126.5
bàn	半	107.1
bànxīn-bùjiù	半新不旧	107.4
bàntiān	半天	107.5
bāng	帮	169.1
bāngdàománg	帮倒忙	169.5
bāngmáng	帮忙	100.5/169.4
bāngshǒu	帮手	169.3
bāngzhù	帮助	169.2/170.2
běi	北	208.1
běifāng	北方	208.2
Běijīng	北京	208.4/209.2
Běiměizhōu	北美洲	208.5
běn	本	167.1
běndì	本地	167.2
běnháng	本行	167.3
běnlái	本来	167.4

běnlǐng	本领	167.5
bǐ	比	94.1
bǐbushàng	比不上	94.5
bǐfāng	比方	94.4
bǐjiào	比较	94.2/224.2
bǐsài	比赛	94.3
biān	边	175.1
biān ... biān	边 ... 边	175.2
biàn	便	149.1
biànlì	便利	149.3
biàntiáo	便条	149.4/187.4
biǎoxiàn	表现	101.5
bù/bù	不	38.1
búcuò	不错	38.3
búguò	不过	186.5
búshì	不是	24.3
bùduō-bùshǎo	不多不少	38.2
bù hǎo yìsi	不好意思	38.4
bùjiǔ	不久	38.5/212.5
bùshǎo	不少	44.2
bùyí	不宜	150.2
bù	步	120.1
bùzhòu	步骤	120.2

C

cháng	长	215.1
Chángchéng	长城	137.5
chángchù	长处	215.3
Chángjiāng	长江	215.2
chángpǎo	长跑	119.5
chángyuǎn	长远	182.5
cháng	常	225.1
chángcháng	常常	225.2
chángjiàn	常见	225.3
chángshí	常识	225.4
chē	车	207.1
chēfèi	车费	207.2
chēhuò	车祸	207.5

chéng	城	137.1	dàodǐ	到底	202.3
chéngshì	城市	137.3	dàojiā	到家	202.4
chéngxiāng	城乡	137	dàoqī	到期	134.5/202.5
chī	吃	108.1	dào	道	250.1
chībuxià	吃不下	108.4	dàoli	道理	250.3
chīdexià	吃得下	108.3	dàolù	道路	250.2
chīfàn	吃饭	108.2	dàoqiān	道歉	250.4
chīkǔ	吃苦	108.5	dàoyì	道义	250.5
chí	池	229.1	de	的	34.1
chítáng	池塘	229.5	dě (verb)	得	240.1
chuáng	床	118.1	de (verbal particle)	得	240.2
chuángshàng	床上	118.2	děyì	得意	240.3
chuángdān	床单	118.3	dézuì	得罪	240.4
cí	词	165.1	děi	得	240.5
cídiǎn	词典	165.2/166.4	Déguó	德国	26.3
cíhuìbiǎo	词汇表	165.5	dì	地	205.1
cóng	从	203.1	dìdao	地道	205.5
cóng nàr qǐ	从那儿起	81.5	dìfang	地方	205.2
cóng ... dào	从 ... 到	203.2	dìtiě	地铁	206.4
cónglái	从来	203.3/211.5	dìtú	地图	205.3
cóngqián	从前	203.4	dìxià	地下	205.4
cóngxiǎo	从小	203.5	dì	弟	57.1
D			dìdì	弟弟	57.2
dà	大	91.1	dìxí	弟媳	57.4
dà xiōngdì	大兄弟	61.4	dìxiōng	弟兄	57.3
dàgài	大概	94.5	dīyī	第一	1.5
dàgē	大哥	55.3	diǎn	点	103.1
dàjiā	大家	91.3	diǎncài	点菜	103.4
dàjiē	大街	188.3	diǎntóu	点头	103.5
dàshēng	大声	91.2	diǎnzhōng	点钟	104.2
dàxiǎo	大小	91.4	diǎn	典	166.1
dàxiě	大写	42.4	diǎnlǐ	典礼	166.2
dàxuésēng	大学生	99.4	diǎnxíng	典型	166.3
dàxióngmāo	大熊猫	89.4	diàn	电	129.1
dāncí	单词	165.4	diànhuà	电话	129.5
dānrénchuáng	单人床	118.4	diànnǎo	电脑	129.4/151.4
dào	到	202.1	diànshì	电视	129.3
dàochù	到处	202.5	diànyǐng	电影	129.2
			diànyǐngyuàn	电影院	177.5

diàn	店	142.1
diànyuán	店员	142.5
dōng	东	139.1
dōngběi	东北	208.3
dōngbian	东边	139.2
Dōngjīng	东京	209.4
Dōngnányà	东南亚	139.3
dōngxī	东西	139.4
dōng	冬	220.1
dōnggū	冬菇	220.4
dōngjì	冬季	220.3
dōngtiān	冬天	220.2
dōngzhuāng	冬装	220.5
dòng	动	234.1
dòngshēn	动身	234.2
dòngren	动人	234.3
dòngtīng	动听	234.4
dòngwùyuán	动物园	180.5/234.5
dōu	都	80.1
dòufu'nǎor	豆腐脑儿	151.5
dū	都	80
dūshì	都市	80.2
dú	读	161.1
dúběn	读本	161.4
dúshū	读书	161.2
dúzhě	读者	161.3/246.3
dúyī-wú'èr	独一无二	2.5
duì	对	176.1
duìbuqǐ	对不起	176.3
duìmiàn	对面	176.2
duìshǒu	对手	176.4
duìyú	对于	176.5
duō	多	43.1
duōbàn	多半	43.3
duō jiǔ	多久	212.2
duōme	多么	13.4/43.5
duōshao	多少	44.4
duōshù	多数	43.4
duōxiè	多谢	77.3

E

ér	儿	83.1
ěrgē	儿歌	83.4
ěrnǚ	儿女	83.3
ěrtóng	儿童	83.5
érzi	儿子	83.2
éryǐ	而已	213.4
èr	二	2.1
Èryuè	二月	2.3
èrděng	二等	2.4
èrgē	二哥	2.2/55.4
èrjiě	二姐	56.2

F

fàn	饭	110.1
fāncài	饭菜	110.2
fāndiàn	饭店	110.4
fānguǎnr	饭馆儿	110.3
fāng	方	230.1
fāngbiàn	方便	149.2/230.2
fāngfǎ	方法	230.4
fāngkuàizì	方块字	148.5
fāngmiàn	方面	230.5
fāngxiàng	方向	230.5
fāngdōng	房东	139.5
fángjiān	房间	216.4
fēn	分	105.1
fēnbié	分别	105.3
fēnbiàn	分辨	105.4
fēnzhōng	分钟	105.2
fúhuāngdiàn	服装店	142.4
fù	父	74.1
fùmǔ	父母	74.3/75.3
fùqīn	父亲	74.2/76.3
fùjìn	附近	191.5
fùnǚ	妇女	85.5

G

gǎnjué	感觉	237.5
--------	----	-------

gǎnxiè	感谢	77.4
gàn ma?	干吗?	30.4
gāngtiě	钢铁	206.2
gē	哥	55.1
gēge	哥哥	55.2
gēermen	哥儿们	51.5/55.5
gèbié	个别	45.5
gègè	个个	45.3
gèrén	个人	45.4
ge	个	45.1
gōng	工	96.1
gōngchǎng	工厂	96.5
gōngyè	工业	96.4
gōngzī	工资	96.3
gōngzuò	工作	96.2
gōng	公	179.1
gōnggòng	公共	179.2/243.5
gōnggòngqìchē	公共汽车	207.4
gōngjīn	公斤	179.4
gōnglǐ	公里	179.3
gōngshēng	公升	179.4
gōngyuán	公园	180.2
Gōngyuán	公元	156.4
Gōngyuánqián	公元前	156.5
gòng	共	243.1
gònghéguó	共和国	243.5
gòngtóng	共同	243.2
gǒu	狗	88.1
gǒupì	狗屁	88.5
gǒuxióng	狗熊	88.4
gūmā	姑妈	66.5
gǔdiǎn	古典	166.5
guì	贵	22.1
guìguó	贵国	22.3
guìxìng	贵姓	22.2
guó	国	26.1
guójì	国际	26.5
guójiā	国家	26.2
guóqīng	国庆	26.4
guò	过	186.1

guòmǐn	过敏	186.2
guòqù	过去	186.3
guòshí	过时	186.4
H		
hái	还	59.1
hái yǒu	还有	59.2
háishi	还是	24.5/59.3
hái	孩	87.1
háizi	孩子	84.2
háizihuà	孩子话	87.5
háiziqì	孩子气	87.4
hǎi	海	221.1
hǎibā	海拔	221.2
hǎibian	海边	175.5/221.3
hǎiwài	海外	221.4
Hàn	汉	46.1
Hànxué	汉学	46.5
Hànyǔ	汉语	46.2
Hànzì	汉字	15.5/46.3
Hànzú	汉族	46.4
hǎo	好	17.1
hǎo ma?	好吗?	30.1
hǎobàn	好办	17.2
hǎochī	好吃	17.3
hǎochù	好处	17.4
hǎokàn	好看	17.5
hǎoxiàng shì ... ba	好像是... 吧	159.4
hé	和	54.1
héhǎo	和好	54.2
hémù	和睦	54.4
hépíng	和平	54.3
hēqì	和气	54.5
hēyǐng	合影	130.5
hěn	很	71.1
hěnduō	很多	71.4
hěn hǎo	很好	71.2
hěn huài	很坏	71.3
hěn jìn	很近	71.5
hòu	后	172.1

hòubā	后爸	65.3
hòuguǒ	后果	172.4
hòumā	后妈	66.3
hòumian	后面	172.2
hòutiān	后天	172.3
hòu	候	112.1
húshuō-bādao	胡说八道	8.4
huāyuán	花园	180.3
huāyàng	花样	73.5
huān	欢	218.1
huānjù	欢聚	218.3
huānlè	欢乐	218.4
huānxǐ	欢喜	217.4/218.2
huānyíng	欢迎	218.5
huán	还	59.4
huánjià	还价	59.5
huì	会	41.1/41.2
huì ... ba	会 ... 吧	159.3
huìhuà	会话	41.4
huìyì	会议	41.5
huó	活	233.1
huódòng	活动	233.2
huólì	活力	233.3
huópō	活泼	233.4
huǒ	火	247.1
huǒchái	火柴	247.3
huǒchē	火车	207.3/247.2
huǒchēzhàn	火车站	248.2
huǒhou	火候	247.4
huǒqì	火气	247.5
huò	或	245.1
huòshì	或是	245.2
huòzhě	或者	245.3
huòxǔ	或许	245.4

J

jǐ	几	63.1
jǐ cì	几次	63.3
jǐ ge	几个	63.2
jǐ fēn	几分	63.5

jǐshí	几时	63.4
jìfù	继父	74.3
jìzhě	记者	246.4
jiā	家	62.1
jiāchángcài	家常菜	62.3
jiātíng	家庭	62.2
jiāwùshì	家务事	62.4
jiàqī	假期	134.3
jiān	间	216.1
jiàn	见	190.1
jiànmiàn	见面	190.2
jiànshi	见识	190.3
jiànxiào	见笑	190.4
jiàn	件	145.1
jiǎobù	脚步	120.3
jiào	叫	11.1
jiàohǎn	叫喊	11.4
jiàomén	叫门	11.3
jiàozuò	叫座	11.5
jiàozuò	叫做	11.2
jiào	觉	237.1
jiào	校	178.1
jiàoduì	校对	178.2
jiào	较	224.1
jiàoliàng	较量	224.4
jiàowéi	较为	224.5
jiē	街	188.1
jiēdào	街道	188.2
jiě	姐	56.1
jiěfu	姐夫	56.4/58.4
jiějie	姐姐	56.3
jiěmèi	姐妹	58.5
jīn	今	121.1
jīnhòu	今后	121.5
jīnnián	今年	121.4
jīntiān	今天	121.2
jīnwǎn	今晚	121.3
jìn	进	136.1
jìnbù	进步	120.3/136.3
jìrchéng	进城	137.4

jìnchūkǒu	进出口	136.4
jìnlai	进来	136.2
jìnxíng	进行	136.5
jìn	近	191.1
jìnbìan	近便	191.4
jìnlái	近来	191.2
jìnshì	近视	191.3
jīng	京	209.1
Jīngjù	京剧	209.5
jīng	经	214.1
jīngcháng	经常	214.2
jīngguò	经过	214.3
jīnglǐ	经理	214.4
jīngyàn	经验	214.5
jiǔ	九	9.1
jiǔjiǔbiào	九九表	9.2
jiǔjífēng	九级风	9.3
jiǔgōnggér	九宫格儿	9.4
Jiǔyīyī	九一一	9.5
jiǔ	久	212.1
jiǔděng	久等	212.3
jiǔliú	久留	212.4
jiù	就	158.1
jiùshì	就是	157.2
jiùshǒu	就手	158.3
jiùsuàn	就算	158.5
jiùyào	就要	158.4
jiù ... ba	就 ... 吧	159.2
juéde	觉得	237.4

K

kàn	看	128.1
kàn diànyǐng	看电影	128.2
kànjiàn	看见	128.4
kànlái	看来	128.5
kànshū	看书	128.3
kě	可	241.1
kě'ài	可爱	241.3
kěnéng	可能	241.5
kěshì	可是	241.2

kěyǐ	可以	241.4
kōng	空	127.1
kōngqì	空气	127.2
kōngtiáo	空调	127.3
kōngr	空儿	127.4
kōngxián	空闲	127.5
kǒu	口	64.1
kǒufú	口福	64.2
kǒuqì	口气	64.4
kǒuwèi	口味	64.3
kǒuyīn	口音	64.5
kuài	块	148.1

L

là de	辣的	34.2
lái	来	211.1
láibují	来不及	211.2
lái huí	来回	211.3
lái wǎng	来往	211.4
lǎo	老	69.1
lǎopéngyou	老朋友	35.5
lǎobǎixìng	老百姓	23.4
lǎodà	老大	69.2
lǎopo	老婆	69.3
lǎoshī	老师	70.2
lǎoshi	老实	69.5
lǎowài	老外	69.4
lǎoxiōng	老兄	61.2
le	了	106.1/106.2/106.3
lěng	冷	219.1
lěngbīngbīng	冷冰冰	219.5
lěngjìng	冷静	219.2
lěngluò	冷落	219.4
lěngshuǐ	冷水	219.3
lí	离	181.1
líbié	离别	181.4
líkāi	离开	181.3
líhūn	离婚	181.2
lítóu	离题	181.5
lǐ	里	82.1

lǐbian	里边	82.4
lǐtou	里头	82.5
liàn	练	162.1
liànwǔ	练武	162.5
liànxí	练习	162.2
liànxíběn	练习本	162.3
liànxítí	练习题	162.4
liǎng	两	60.1
liǎng cì	两次	60.3
liǎng ge	两个	60.2/45.2
liǎng suì	两岁	60.4
liǎngbànr	两半儿	60.5
liǎngpáng	两旁	174.3
líng	零	160.1
língjiàn	零件	145.3
língqián	零钱	146.4/160.4
língsuì	零碎	160.3
língxià	零下	160.2
língyòngqián	零用钱	160.5
liù	六	6.1
Liù yī	六一	6.4
Liù yuè	六月	6.2
lù	路	194.1
lùbiāo	路标	194.2
lùkǒu	路口	194.4
lùshang	路上	194.3
lùxiàn	路线	194.5
luànqībāzāo	乱七八糟	8.5
lǚshī	律师	70.5

M

mā	妈	66.1
māma	妈妈	66.2
mǎ	马	193.1
mǎhu	马虎	193.3
Mǎlāsōng	马拉松	193.5
mǎlù	马路	193.2
mǎshàng	马上	193.4
ma	吗	30.1

mǎi	买	138.1
mǎibudào	买不到	138.5
mǎibuqǐ	买不起	138.3
mǎideqǐ	买得起	138.2
mǎimài	买卖	138.4/153.5
mài	卖	153.1
màilì	卖力	153.2
màinòng	卖弄	153.4
màizuò	卖座	153.3
máng	忙	100.1
mánglù	忙碌	100.3
mángzhe	忙着	100.2
máng ma?	忙吗?	30.3
máng rén	忙人	100.4
māo	猫	89.1
māotóuyīng	猫头鹰	89.5
máo	毛	143.1
máobǐ	毛笔	143.3
máobìng	毛病	143.4
máoyī	毛衣	143.2/144.2
me	么	13.1
méi	没	53.1
méiyǒu	没有	53.2
méi guānxi	没关系	53.3
méi yìsi	没意思	53.4
méiwán-méiliǎo	没完没了	53.5
měi	美	29.1
Měiguó	美国	29.5
měihǎo	美好	29.3
měihuà	美化	29.4
měilì	美丽	29.2
Měiyuán	美元	156.2
měi	每	135.1
měi ge xīngqī	每个星期	135.4
měiměi	每每	135.5
měinián	每年	135.3
měitiān	每天	135.2
mèi	妹	58.1
mèifu	妹夫	58.4

men	们	51.0
mǐfàn	米饭	110.5
miàn	面	173.1
miànji	面积	173.4
miànmào	面貌	173.2
miànshǔ	面熟	173.3
miàntiáo	面条	187.5
miànzi	面子	173.5
míng	名	14.1
míngpái	名牌	14.3
míngpiàn	名片	14.4
míngshèng	名胜	14.5
míngzi	名字	14.2
míng	明	123.1
míngbai	明白	123.2
míngtiān	明天	123.3
míngxiǎn	明显	123.4
míngzhī	明知	123.5
mò	末	232.1
mòbānchē	末班车	232.4
mòqī	末期	232.3
mòrì	末日	232.5
mǔ	母	75.1
mǔgǒu	母狗	88.3
mǔmāo	母猫	89.2
mǔqīn	母亲	75.2/76.4
mǔxiào	母校	178.5
mǔyǔ	母语	75.4

N

nǎ	哪	25.1
nǎguórén	哪国人	25.5
nǎli	哪里	25.3/82.2
nǎr	哪儿	25.2
nǎxiē	哪些	25.4
nà	那	81.1
nà ge	那个	81.2
nàbian	那边	81.4
nàme	那么	13.2/81.3

nǎqù	拿去	132.5
nán	男	86.1
nán cèsuǒ	男厕所	86.5
nán'gāoyīn	男高音	86.4
nánhái	男孩儿	86.2
nánpéngyou	男朋友	35.3/86.3
nánshìmen	男士们	51.4
nán	南	210.1
Nánbànqiú	南半球	210.5
nánbian	南边	210.2
nánbù	南部	210.3
nánfāng	南方	210.4
Nánjīng	南京	209.3
nǎo	脑	151.1
nǎojīn	脑筋	151.2
nǎozhī	脑汁	151.3
ne	呢	238.1-238.5
néng	能	195.1
nénggàn	能干	195.3
nénggòu	能够	195.2
nénglì	能力	195.4
néngyuán	能源	195.5
nǐ	你	16.1
nǐ hǎo!	你好	16.2
nǐmen	你们	16.3/51.1
nǐmen hǎo!	你们好	16.4
nǐmende	你们的	16.5
nián	年	126.1
niánjì	年纪	126.3
niánqīng	年轻	126.4
niánsuì	年岁	93.3
nín	您	21.1
nín hǎo!	您好!	21.2
nín zǎo!	您早!	21.3
nǚ	女	85.1
nǚ'ér	女儿	85.2
nǚháizi	女孩子	87.3
nǚqiáng rén	女强人	85.3
nǚshēng	女生	85.4

nǚpéngyou	女朋友	35.4
nǚshìmen	女士们	51.3
P		
páng	旁	174.1
pángbiān	旁边	174.2
pángguānzhě	旁观者	174.4/246.5
pángtīng	旁听	174.5
pǎo	跑	119.1
pǎobù	跑步	119.2
pǎodào	跑道	119.3
pèijiàn	配件	145.4
péng	朋	35.1
péngyou	朋友	35.2
piányi	便宜	149.5/150.4
píngcháng	平常	225.5
píngguǒyuán	苹果园	180.4
Q		
qī	七	7.1
qī tiān	七天	7.2
Qīyuè	七月	7.3
qīqībābā	七七八八	7.4
qīshàng-bāluò	七上八落	7.5
qīzi	妻子	84.5
qī	期	134.1
qījiān	期间	134.2
qítā	其他 / 其它	31.5/168.4
qǐ	起	117.1
qǐchuáng	起床	117.2
qǐdòng	起动	117.3
qǐmǎ	起码	117.4
qìhòu	气候	112.4
qì	汽	244.1
qìchē	汽车	244.4
qìchuán	汽船	244.5
qìshuǐ	汽水	244.3
qìyóu	汽油	244.2
qiān	千	154.1
qiānfāng-bǎiji	千方百计	154.4

qiānlǐ	千里	154.2
qiān piān yī lǜ	千篇一律	154.5
qiānwàn	千万	154.3
qián	前	171.1
qiánbian	前边	171.3
qiánmian	前面	171.2
qiántiān	前天	171.4
qiántú	前途	171.5
qián	钱	146.1
qiānbāo	钱包	146.2
qīn	亲	76.1
qīnqi	亲戚	76.5
qīnrén	亲人	76.2
qǐng	请	19.1/19.2
qǐngjiào	请教	19.5
qǐng jìnlai	请进来	19.4
qǐngwèn	请问	19.3
qù	去	132.1
qùchù	去处	132.2
qùnián	去年	126.2/132.4
qùshì	去世	132.3

R

rè	热	223.1/223.5
rèdài	热带	223.2
rèdiǎn	热点	223.3
rèqíng	热情	223.4
rén	人	27.1
rénjia	人家	62.5
rénkǒu	人口	27.4
rénmen	人们	27.2
rénshān-rénhǎi	人山人海	27.5
rèn	认	47.1
rènshi	认识	47.2
rènzì	认字	47.3
rènde	认得	47.4
rènzhen	认真	47.5
rì	日	125.1
Rìběn	日本	125.5
rìcháng	日常	125.4

rìjì	日记	125.3
rìqī	日期	125.2
ruǎnjiàn	软件	145.2

S

sàipǎo	赛跑	119.4	shēnmede	什么的	12.3
sān	三	3.1	shēng	生	99.1
sān ge yuè	三个月	3.3	shēngchǎn	生产	99.5
sānjiǎoxíng	三角形	3.2	shēngcí	生词	99.3/165.3
sānmèi	三妹	58.2	shēnghuó	生活	233.5
sāntóu-liùbì	三头六臂	6.5	shēngrì	生日	99.2
sānxīn-èryì	三心二意	3.5	shī	师	70.1
shāng	商	141.1	shīfu	师父	70.3
shāngdiàn	商店	141.3	shīmǔ	师母	70.4
shāngliang	商量	141.5	shí	十	10.1
shāngrén	商人	141.2	shífēn	十分	10.2
shāngyè	商业	141.4	shíquán-shíměi	十全十美	10.5
shàng	上	113.1/113.2	shízì lùkǒu	十字路口	10.4
shàng ge yuè	上个月	124.3	shízú	十足	10.3
shàng xīngqī	上星期	133.4	shí	时	111.1
shàngbian	上边	175.1	shíhou	时候	111.3
Shànghǎi	上海	221.5	shíjī	时机	111.4
shàngjiē	上街	188.4	shíjiān	时间	111.2/216.2
shàngmian	上面	113.3	shímáo	时髦	111.5
shàngwǔ	上午	113.4	shí	识	48.1
shàngxué	上学	113.5	shíbié	识别	48.2
shǎo	少	44.1	shíhuò	识货	48.3
shǎoshù	少数	44.3	shízì	识字	48.4
shàonián	少年	44.5	shízài	实在	102.5
shéi	谁	33.1	shì	是	24.1
shéi zhīdao	谁知道	33.3	shìde	是的	24.2
shéide	谁的	33.2	shìbushì	是不是	24.4
shēn	身	78.1	shìyí	适宜	150.5
shēncái	身材	78.4	shǒudū	首都	80.3
shēn'gāo	身高	78.5	shǒu	手	199.1
shēnshang	身上	78.3	shǒuqì	手气	199.3
shēntǐ	身体	78.2/79.2	shǒuxù	手续	199.5
shén	什	12.0	shǒuyì	手艺	199.4
shénme	什么	12.1	shǒuzhǐ	手纸	199.2
shénme?	什么?	12.2	shū	书	164.1
			shūbāo	书包	164.2
			shūdiàn	书店	142.2/164.3
			shūfǎ	书法	164.5
			shūjià	书架	164.4
			shūxiě	书写	42.5

shuāngrénchuāng	双人床	118.5
shuí	谁	33.1
shuí zhīdao	谁知道	33.3
shuíde	谁的	33.2
shuǐchǐ	水池	229.3
shuì	睡	236.1
shuì lǎnjiào	睡懒觉	237.2
shuì wǔjiào	睡午觉	237.3
shuìjiào	睡觉	236.2
shuìmián	睡眠	236.4
shuìyī	睡衣	236.5
shuō	说	49.1
shuōbudìng	说不定	49.4
shuōfú	说服	49.5
shuōhuà	说话	49.2
shuōhuǎng	说谎	49.3
sì	四	4.1
Sìchuān	四川	4.4
sìfāng	四方	4.2
sìjì	四季	4.3
sītōng-bādá	四通八达	4.5
suì	岁	93.1
suìshù	岁数	93.2
suìyuè	岁月	93.4

T

tā	他	31.1
tāmāde	他妈的	31.4
tārén	他人	31.3
tā	她	32.1
tāde	她的	32.2
tāmen	他们	31.2
tāmen	她们	32.3
tāmende	他们的	32.4
tā	它	168.1
tāde	它的	168.2
tāmen	它们	168.3
tái	台	152.1
Táiběi	台北	152.4
táijiē	台阶	152.2

táiqiú	台球	152.5
Táiwān	台湾	152.3
tài	太	157.1
tàijíquán	太极拳	157.5
tàikōng	太空	157.3
Tàipíngyáng	太平洋	157.4
tàiyáng	太阳	157.2
Tángrenjiē	唐人街	188.5
tǐ	体	79.1
tǐlì	体力	79.4
tǐtiē	体贴	79.5
tǐwēn	体温	79.3
tiān	天	122.1
tiāncái	天才	122.2
tiānqì	天气	122.3
tiānrán	天然	122.4
tiānzhēn	天真	122.5
tiáo	条	187.1
tiáojiàn	条件	187.2
tiáolǐ	条理	187.3
tiě	铁	206.1
tiěfǎnwǎn	铁饭碗	206.5
tiělù	铁路	206.3
tóngxìng	同姓	23.5
túdì	徒弟	57.5

W

wāyòng	蛙泳	228.3
wài	外	192.1
wàibian	外边	175.4
wàibiào	外表	192.3
wàiguórén	外国人	192.4
wàimian	外面	192.2
wàirén	外人	192.5
wàiyǔ	外语	50.2
wàizǔmǔ	外祖母	75.2
wǎn	晚	116.1
wǎnbān	晚班	116.4
wǎndiǎn	晚点	103.3/116.5
wǎnfàn	晚饭	116.3

wánshang	晚上	116.2	xí	习	163.1
wàn	万	155.1	xíguàn	习惯	163.2
wànshì	万事	155.4	xíqì	习气	163.4
wànyī	万一	155.5	xīrǎn	习染	163.3
wǎng	往	184.1	xísú	习俗	163.5
wǎngcháng	往常	184.3	xǐ	喜	217.1
wǎngfǎn	往返	184.4	xǐ'ài	喜爱	217.2
wǎnglái	往来	184.5	xǐhuan	喜欢	217.3
wǎngwǎng	往往	184.2	xǐshì	喜事	217.5
wén	文	40.1	xià	下	114.1
wénhuà	文化	40.4	xià ge yuè	下个月	124.4
wénjiàn	文件	145.5	xiàbān	下班	114.3
wénjùdiàn	文具店	142.3	xiàmian	下面	114.2
wénxué	文学	40.5	xiàwǔ	下午	114.4
wénzì	文字	40.3	xià xīngqī	下星期	133.5
wèn	问	20.1	xià yǔ	下雨	114.5/226.3
wèndá	问答	20.2	xià	夏	222.1
wènǎo	问好	20.4	xiàlìngshí	夏令时	222.3
wèn hòu	问候	112.5	xiàlìngyíng	夏令营	222.4
wèntí	问题	20.3	xiàtiān	夏天	222.2
wǒ	我	18.1	xiàzhuāng	夏装	222.5
wǒmen	我们	18.2	xiàn	现	101.1
wǒmende	我们的	18.3	xiànchéng	现成	104.4
wǔ	五	5.1	xiànjīn	现金	101.3
wǔ diǎn líng qī fēn	五点零七分	103.2	xiànzài	现在	101.2
wǔ ge yuè	五个月	5.3	xiāngjiào	相较	224.3
Wǔyuè	五月	5.2	xiǎo	小	92.1
wǔ tǐ tóu dì	五体投地	5.4	xiǎochī	小吃	92.4
wǔyán-liùsè	五颜六色	5.5	xiǎogǒu	小狗	92.3/88.2
wǔ	午	115.1	xiǎojie	小姐	56.5
wǔfàn	午饭	115.3	xiǎomāo	小猫	89.3
wǔjiān	午间	115.5	xiǎomèi	小妹	58.3
wǔshuì	午睡	115.4/236.3	xiǎoshi	小时	92.2
X			xiǎoshíhou	小时候	92.3
xī	西	140.1	xiǎoxiě	小写	42.4
Xīcān	西餐	140.3	xiǎoxīn	小心	92.5
Xīfāng	西方	140.2	xiào	校	178.1
Xīshì	西式	140.5	xiàoyuán	校园	178.4
Xīyào	西药	140.4	xiě	写	42.1
			xiězuò	写作	42.2

xiè	谢	77.1
xiètiān-xièdì	谢天谢地	77.5
xièxie	谢谢	77.2
xīng	星	133.1
xīngqī	星期	133.2
Xīngqīliù	星期六	6.3
Xīngqīsān	星期三	3.4
xìngyùn	幸运	239.3
xìng	姓	23.1
xìngmíng	姓名	23.2
xìngshì	姓氏	23.3
xiōng	兄	61.1
xiōngdì	兄弟	61.2
xué	学	37.1
xuéfèi	学费	37.5
xuéqī	学期	134.4
xuésheng	学生	37.2
xuéshí	学识	48.5
xuéwèn	学问	20.5
xuéxí	学习	37.3
xuéxiào	学校	37.4/178.3

Y

yāsuìqián	压岁钱	146.5
yàng	样	73.1
yàngzi	样子	73.3
yàome	要么	13.5
.. yěba, ... yěba	也罢 ... 也罢	68.5
yě	也	68.1
yě ... yě	也 ... 也	68.2
yěhǎo	也好	68.5
yěxǔ	也许	68.3
yèjiān	夜间	216.5
yī	一	1.1
yī qiānwàn	一千万	155.3
yī cì	一次	1.4
yí ge	一个	1.2
yí kèzhōng	一刻钟	104.3
yībàn	一半	107.2
yígòng	一共	243.3

yíhuìr	一会儿	41.3
yí kuài qián	一块钱	148.3
yíkuàir	一块儿	148.4
yíyàng	一样	73.4
yì běn (shū)	一本(书)	1.3
yì máo (qián)	一毛(钱)	143.5
yìqǐ	一起	117.5
yìzhí	一直	183.2
yī	衣	144.1
yīfu	衣服	144.3
yījià	衣架	144.5
yīliào	衣料	144.4
yī	医	98.1
yīkē	医科	98.5
yīshēng	医生	98.2
yīwùsuǒ	医务所	98.3
yīyuàn	医院	98.4/177.3
yí	宜	150.1
yírén	宜人	150.3
yímā	姨妈	66.4
yǐ	已	213.1
yǐjīng	已经	213.2
yǐwǎng	已往	213.3
yǐ	以	242.1
yǐbiàn	以便	242.2
yǐhòu	以后	172.5/242.3
yǐqián	以前	242.4
yǐwéi	以为	242.5
yīng	英	39.1
Yīngguó	英国	39.3
yīngjùn	英俊	39.2
yīnglǐ	英里	39.5
Yīngwén	英文	40.2
Yīngyǔ	英语	39.4
yǐng	影	130.1
yǐngmí	影迷	130.2
yǐngxiǎng	影响	130.4
yǐngyìn	影印	130.3
yǒng	泳	228.1
yǒngdào	泳道	228.5

yòng	用	196.1	yuǎnchù	远处	182.2
yòngchù	用处	196.2	yuǎnjīn	远近	182.3
yònggōng	用功	196.3	yuàn	院	177.1
yònglì	用力	196.4	yuànzi	院子	177.2
yòngxīn	用心	196.5	yuè	月	124.1
yóu	游	227.1	yuèdú	阅读	161.5
yóulǎn	游览	227.5	yuèliang	月亮	124.5
yóurén	游人	227.4	yùn	运	239.1
yóuxì	游戏	227.3	yùnqì	运气	239.2
yóuyǒng	游泳	227.2/228.2	yùndòng	运动	239.4
yóuyǒngchí	游泳池	229.2	yùnyòng	运用	239.5
yǒu	友	36.1	Z		
yǒuhǎo	友好	36.4	zài	在	102.1
yǒuqíng	友情	36.2	zài jiā	在家	102.2
yǒuyì	友谊	36.3	zàinèi	在内	102.3
yǒu	有	52.1	zàiwài	在外	102.4
yǒu shíhòu	有时候	112.3	zài	再	189.1
yǒu yìsi	有意思	52.4	zàicì	再次	189.2
yǒude	有的	34.3	zàijiàn	再见	189.3/190.5
yǒuhài	有害	52.5	zàisān	再三	189.4
yǒumíng	有名	52.2	zàishuō	再说	189.5
yǒuqián	有钱	52.3/146.3	zánmen	咱们	51.2
yòu	右	198.1	zǎo	早	109.1
yòubian	右边	198.2	zǎochén	早晨	109.4
yòucè	右侧	198.3	zǎofàn	早饭	109.2
yòushǒu	右手	198.4	zǎorì	早日	109.5
yǔ	雨	226.1	zǎoshang	早上	109.3
yǔjì	雨季	226.4	zěn	怎	72.1
yǔsǎn	雨伞	226.5	zěnme	怎么	13.3/72.2
yǔ	语	50.1	zěnmeyàng	怎么样	72.4/73.2
yǔfǎ	语法	50.3	zěnyàng	怎样	72.3
yǔkuài	鱼块	148.2	zhàn	站	248.1
yǔqì	语气	50.5	zhàn lì	站立	248.3
yǔyán	语言	50.4	zhàn wěn	站稳	248.4
yùchí	浴池	229.4	zhàn zhù	站住	248.5
yuán	元	156.1	zhǎng dà	长大	215.4
Yuándàn	元旦	156.3	zhǎng bèi	长辈	215.5
yuán	园	180.1	zhè	这	67.1
yuǎn	远	182.1	zhè ge	这个	67.2
yuǎndà	远大	182.4			

zhè ge yuè	这个月	124.2
zhè ge xīngqī	这个星期	133.3
zhèlǐ	这里	82.3
zhème	这么	13.1
zhèr	这儿	67.3
zhèxiē	这些	67.4
zhèyàng	这样	67.5
zhě	者	246.1
zhènyǔ	阵雨	226.2
zhī	只	90.1
zhī	知	249.1
zhīdao	知道	249.2
zhījī	知己	249.3
zhīshi	知识	249.5
zhīyīn	知音	249.4
zhí	直	183.1
zhídào	直到	183.3
zhíjiē	直接	183.4
zhílái-zhíqù	直来直去	183.5
zhǐbù	止步	120.5
zhǐ	只	200.1
zhǐgù	只顾	200.2
zhǐshì	只是	200.3
zhǐyào ... jiù	只要 ... 就	200.4
zhǐyǒu	只有	200.5
zhōng	中	28.1
Zhōngcān	中餐	28.5
Zhōngguó	中国	28.3
Zhōngguó rén	中国人	27.3
zhōngjí	中级	28.2
zhōngjiān	中间	216.3
Zhōngwén	中文	28.4
zhōngwǔ	中午	115.2
zhōng	钟	104.1
zhōngqíng	钟情	104.5
zhōngtóu	钟头	104.4
zhōu	周	231.1
zhōumò	周末	232.2
zhōunián	周年	231.3
zhōurì	周日	231.2

zhōushēn	周身	231.4
zhōuwéi	周围	231.5
zhù	住	201.1
zhùchù	住处	201.2
zhùhù	住户	201.3
zhùyuàn	住院	177.2/201.4
zhùzhái	住宅	201.5
zhù	助	170.1
zhùshǒu	助手	170.3
zhùxīng	助兴	170.4
zhùxuéjīn	助学金	170.5
zǐ	子	84.1
zǐnǚ	子女	84.3
zǐsūn	子孙	84.4
zì	字	15.1
zìdiǎn	字典	15.2
zìmǔ	字母	15.3
zìmù	字幕	15.4
zìwǒ	自我	18.4
zìyóuyǒng	自由泳	228.4
zǒu	走	185.1
zǒu-qīn fàng-yǒu	走亲访友	36.5
zǒudòng	走动	185.3
zǒulù	走路	185.2
zǒushī	走失	185.4
zǒuyùn	走运	185.5
zǔfù	祖父	74.4
zuórì	昨日	131.3
zuótiān	昨天	131.1
zuótiānde	昨天的	34.3/131.2
zuówǎn	昨晚	131.4
zuóyè	昨夜	131.5
zuǒ	左	197.1
zuǒbian	左边	197.2
zuǒpiězi	左撇子	197.4
zuǒshǒu	左手	197.3
zuǒsī-yòuxiǎng	左思右想	198.5
zuǒyòu	左右	197.5
zuò	作	97.1
zuòjiā	作家	97.2

zuòwén	作文	97.3
zuòyè	作业	97.4
zuòyòng	作用	97.5
zuòzhě	作者	246.2
zuò	坐	204.1
zuò huǒchē	坐火车	204.2
zuòbān	坐班	204.5

zuòbuxià	坐不下	204.4
zuòwèi	坐位	204.3
zuò	做	95.1
zuò shēngyì	做生意	95.4
zuòcài	做菜	95.2
zuòmèng	做梦	95.5
zuòshì	做事	95.3

Radical Index

1 stroke

[一] #2

一	yī	1
七	qī	7
三	sān	3
下	xià	114
上	shàng	113
万	wàn	155
天	tiān	122
不	bù	38
五	wǔ	5
可	kě	241
东	dōng	139
再	zài	189
百	bǎi	147
来	lái	211
两	liǎng	60
面	miàn	173
哥	gē	55

[丨] #3

中	zhōng	28
北	běi	208
电	diàn	129
师	shī	70

[丿] #4

九	jiǔ	9
千	qiān	154
么	me	13
久	jiǔ	212
午	wǔ	115
长	cháng/zhǎng	215
生	shēng	99
乐	lè/yuè	278
年	nián	126
后	hòu	172

[乙] (乚 乚) #5

了	le	106
习	xí	163
也	yě	68
书	shū	164
电	diàn	129
买	mǎi	138

2 strokes

[冫] #6

六	liù	6
京	jīng	209
离	lí	181
商	shāng	140
就	jiù	158

[冫] #7

冷	lěng	219
---	------	-----

[冫] #8

写	xiě	42
---	-----	----

[讠] #9

认	rèn	47
识	shí	48
词	cí	165
说	shuō	49
语	yǔ	50
请	qǐng	19
谁	shéi/shuí	33
谢	xiè	77

[二] #10

二	èr	2
五	wǔ	5
元	yuán	156

[十] #11

十	shí	10
半	bàn	17
直	zhí	183
卖	mài	153
南	nán	210

[匚] #13

医	yī	98
---	----	----

[卜] #14

外	wài	192
---	-----	-----

[刂] #15

到	dào	202
---	-----	-----

[冂] #16

周	zhōu	231
---	------	-----

[八] #17

八	bā	8
公	gōng	179
分	fēn	106
半	bàn	107
只	zhī/zhǐ	90/200
共	gòng	243
弟	dì	57
前	qián	171
首	shǒu	271

[人] #18

人	rén	27
个	ge	45
今	jīn	121
从	cóng	203
以	yǐ	242
会	huì	18

[亻] #19

什	shēn	12
们	men	51
他	tā	31
件	jiàn	146
住	zhù	201
体	tǐ	79
作	zuò	97
你	nǐ	16
便	biàn/piǎn	149
候	hòu	112
做	zuò	95

[儿] #21

儿	ér	83
元	yuán	156
兄	xiōng	61

[几] #22

几	jǐ	63
---	----	----

[厶] #23

么	me	13
去	qù	132
台	tái	152
能	néng	195

[又] #24

友	yǒu	36
对	duì	176
欢	huān	218

[阝] (left) #27

院	yuàn	177
---	------	-----

[阝] (right) #28

那	nà	81
都	dōu/dū	80

[刀] #30

分	fēn	106
---	-----	-----

[力] #31

动	dòng	234
助	zhù	170
男	nán	86

3 strokes

[氵] #32

汉	Hàn	46
池	chí	229
汽	qì	244
没	méi	53
泳	yǒng	228
活	huó	233
海	hǎi	221
游	yóu	227

[亻] #33

忙	máng	100
---	------	-----

[宀] #34

它	tā	168
字	zì	15
宜	yí	150
家	jiā	62

[广] #36

床	chuáng	118
店	diàn	142

[门] #37

问	wèn	20
间	jiān	216

[辶] #38

边	biān	175
过	guò	186
这	zhè	66
进	jìn	136
远	yuǎn	182

运	yùn	239
---	-----	-----

还	hái/huán	59
---	----------	----

近	jìn	191
---	-----	-----

道	dào	250
---	-----	-----

[工] #39

工	gōng	96
---	------	----

左	zuǒ	197
---	-----	-----

[土] #40

去	qù	132
---	----	-----

在	zài	101
---	-----	-----

地	dì	205
---	----	-----

坐	zuò	204
---	-----	-----

块	kuài	148
---	------	-----

城	chéng	137
---	-------	-----

[士] #41

喜	xǐ	217
---	----	-----

[艹] #42

英	yīng	39
---	------	----

[大] #43

太	tài	157
---	-----	-----

天	tiān	122
---	------	-----

美	měi	29
---	-----	----

[寸] #46

对	duì	176
---	-----	-----

[小 (㇀)] #49

小	xiǎo	92
---	------	----

少	shǎo	44
---	------	----

常	cháng	225
---	-------	-----

[口] #50

口	kǒu	64
---	-----	----

右	yòu	198
---	-----	-----

可	kě	241
---	----	-----

只	zhǐ/zhǐ	90/200
兄	xiōng	61
台	tái	152
叫	jiào	11
吃	chī	108
后	hòu	172
名	míng	14
吗	ma	30
吧	ba	159
知	zhī	249
和	hé	54
呢	ne	238
哪	nǎ	25
哥	gē	55
喜	xǐ	217
[口] #51		
四	sì	4
因	yīn	297
园	yuán	180
国	guó	26
[巾] #52		
常	cháng	225
师	shī	70
帮	bāng	169
[山] #53		
岁	suì	93
[彳] #54		
很	hěn	71
往	wǎng	73
得	dé/de/děi	240
街	jiē	188
[彡] #55		
影	yǐng	130
[夕] #56		
名	míng	14

岁	suì	93
多	duō	43
[夂] #57		
冬	dōng	220
条	tiáo	187
夏	xià	222
[犛] #58		
狗	gǒu	88
猫	māo	89
[饣] #59		
饭	fàn	110
[己] #62		
己	yǐ	213
[女] #65		
女	nǚ	85
她	tā	32
好	hǎo	17
妈	mā	66
妹	mèi	58
姐	jiě	56
姓	xìng	23
[子] #67		
子	zǐ	84
学	xué	37
孩	hái	87
[彡] #68		
练	liàn	162
经	jīng	214
[马] #69		
马	mǎ	193

4 strokes

[丶] #71

点	diǎn	104
热	rè	223

[文] #73

文	wén	40
---	-----	----

[方] #74

方	fāng	230
旁	páng	174

[火] #75

火	huǒ	247
---	-----	-----

[心] #76

怎	zěn	72
您	nín	21

[王] #79

现	xiàn	101
---	------	-----

[木] #81

本	běn	167
末	mò	232
床	chuáng	118
条	tiáo	187
校	xiào	178
样	yàng	73

[车] #84

车	chē	207
较	jiào	224

[戈] #85

我	wǒ	18
或	huò	245

[比] #86

比	bǐ	94
---	----	----

[止] #88

步 bù 120

[日] #90

日 rì 125

早 zǎo 109

时 shí 111

明 míng 123

是 shì 24

星 xīng 133

昨 zuó 131

晚 wǎn 116

[曰] #91

者 zhě 246

[贝] #92

贵 guì 22

[见] #93

见 jiàn 190

现 xiàn 101

觉 jué 237

[父] #94

父 fù 74

爸 bà 65

[手] #96

手 shǒu 199

[毛] #97

毛 máo 143

[气] #98

气 qì 98

[爪(爰)] #102

爱 ài 235

[月] #103

月 yuè 124

有 yǒu 52

朋 péng 35

脑 nǎo 151

期 qī 134

[欠] #104

欢 huān 218

[母] #108

母 mù 75

每 měi 135

5 strokes

[穴] #110

空 kōng/kòng 127

[立] #111

站 zhàn 248

亲 qīn 76

[目] #118

目 mù 128

睡 shuì 236

[田] #119

男 nán 86

[钅] #122

钟 zhōng 104

钱 qián 122

铁 tiě 206

[矢] #123

知 zhī 249

[禾] #124

和 hé 54

[白] #125

百 bǎi 147

的 de 34

[用] #128

用 yòng 196

6 strokes

[衣] #132

衣 yī 144

[羊] #133

美 měi 29

[老] #136

老 lǎo 69

[西] #139

西 xī 140

7 strokes

[走] #156

走 zǒu 185

起 qǐ 117

[里] #163

里 lǐ 82

[足] #164

跑 pǎo 119

路 lù 194

[身] #168

身 shēn 78

8 strokes

[其] #171

期 qī 134

[雨] #172

零 líng 160

KEY

Quiz 1 (1-10)

- A.
- B. (i) (ii)
- C. (i) (ii)
- D. (i) (ii)

Quiz 2 (11-20)

- A.
- B. **Pinyin** (i) Wǒ wèn nǐ. (ii) Nǐ wèn wǒ shénme? (iii) Wǒ jiào shénme míngzi? **Characters** 我问你。 你问我什么? 我叫什么名字? **Translation** I ask you. What did you ask me? What's my name?
- C. (i) (ii)

Quiz 3 (21-30)

- A.
- B. **Pinyin** (i) Qǐngwèn, nín guìxìng? (ii) Qǐngwèn, guìguó shì nǎguó? (iii) Qǐngwèn, nǐ shì nǎguórén? **Characters** 请问, 您贵姓? 请问, 贵国是哪国? 请问, 你是哪国人? **Translation** Excuse me, may I ask your name? Excuse me, which country do you come from? Excuse me, what nationality are you?

- C. (i)
- | | |
|--------|--------------|
| 哪 ge | fine, happy |
| 国 qīng | which one |
| 哪 xiē | beautiful |
| 美 lǐ | country |
| 美好 | which ones |
| 国 jiā | National Day |

- (ii)
- | | |
|-------|------------------|
| 中 wēn | population |
| 是 de | Chinese food |
| hái 是 | name |
| 人 kǒu | Chinese language |
| 姓名 | or |
| 中 cān | yes |

Quiz 4 (31–40)

- A.
- | | | |
|---|---|---|
| 她 | 朋 | 友 |
| 学 | 英 | 文 |
| 不 | 谁 | 的 |
- | Word or phrase | Pinyin | English meaning |
|----------------|---------------|-----------------|
| (i) 朋友 | péngyou | friend/s |
| (ii) 学英文 | xué Yīngwén | learn English |
| (iii) 谁的 | shuí/shéi' de | whose |
- B.
- | Pinyin | Characters | Translation |
|-----------------------------|--------------|-----------------------------|
| (i) Shuí/shéi de péngyou? | 谁的朋友? | Whose friend is this? |
| (ii) Tā xué bù xué Zhōngwén | 她 / 他学不学中文? | Does she/he study Chinese? |
| (iii) Bù, tā xué Yīngwén. | 不, 她 / 他学英文。 | No, she/he studies English. |
- C. (i)
- | | |
|-----------|--------------------|
| 中文 | the United Kingdom |
| 文 huà | spicy (chilli hot) |
| là 的 | English language |
| yǒu 的 | Chinese language |
| zuótiān 的 | yesterday's |
| 英 guó | civilization |
| 英 lǐ | some |
| 英文 | mile |
- (ii)
- | | |
|---------|--------------|
| nǚ 朋友 | study |
| lǎo 朋友 | girl friend |
| 友好 | school |
| 学 shēng | a short time |
| 学 xī | old friends |
| 学 xiǎo | quite a few |
| 不 jiǔ | friendly |
| 不 shǎo | student |

Quiz 5 (41–50)

- A.
- | | | |
|---|---|---|
| 多 | 少 | 说 |
| 写 | 会 | 汉 |
| 认 | 识 | 语 |
- | Word or phrase | Pinyin | English meaning |
|----------------|------------|-----------------|
| (i) 多少 | duōshao | how many/much |
| (ii) 说汉语 | shuō Hànyǔ | speak Chinese |
| (iii) 认识 | rènshi | recognize |
- B.
- | Pinyin | Characters | Translation |
|---------------------------------|-------------|--|
| (i) Nǐ huì shuō Hànyǔ ma? | 你会说汉语吗? | Can you speak Chinese? |
| (ii) Nǐ huì bùhuì xiě Hànzì? | 你会不会写汉字? | Can you write Chinese characters? |
| (iii) Nǐ huì xiě duōshao Hànzì? | 你会写多少汉字? | How many Chinese characters can you write? |
| (iv) Tā bùhuì xiě Hànzì. | 他 / 她不会写汉字。 | He/she can't write Chinese characters. |
- C. (i)
- | | |
|---------|------------------|
| 多 shǔ | minority |
| 少 shǔ | speak |
| 说 huà | English language |
| 说不 dīng | maybe |
| 说 fú | majority |
| wài 语 | convince |
| 英语 | grammar |
| 语 fǎ | foreign language |
- (ii)
- | | |
|-------|------------------|
| 一会儿 | literate |
| 会话 | Chinese language |
| 写 zuò | a moment |
| 大写 | writing |
| 个人 | conversation |
| 认 de | capital letters |
| 识字 | individual |
| 汉语 | recognize |

Character Building 1 (1–50)

- A. 1. [一] 一 *yī*, one; 三 *sān*, three; 五 *wǔ*, five;
七 *qī*, seven; 不 *bù*, not.
2. [九] 九 *jiǔ*, nine; 么 *me*, particle.
3. [讠] 请 *qǐng*, please; 谁 *shéi/shuí*, who; 认
rèn, recognize; 识 *shí*, know; 语 *yǔ*,
language; 说 *shuō*, speak.
4. [人] 人 *rén*, person, people; 个 *ge*, classifier;
会 *huì*, be able to.

- B. 1. [中] 中 *zhōng*, middle
2. [八] 八 *bā*, eight
3. [写] 写 *xiě*, write
4. [二] 二 *èr*, two
5. [六] 六 *liù*, six
6. [十] 十 *shí*, ten
7. [友] 友 *yǒu*, friend
8. [汉] 汉 *Hàn*, ethnic Han race
9. [英] 英 *yīng*, hero

- C. 1. [名] 名 *míng*, given name;
多 *duō*, many, much
2. [问] 名 *míng*, given name
问 *wèn*, ask
3. [中] 中 *zhōng*, middle
贵 *guì*, honorific, expensive
4. [好] 好 *hǎo*, good, well;
学 *xué*, learn, study.
字 *zì*, character

5. [你] 你 *nǐ*, you (singular); 他 *tā*, he, him; 什
shén, head word for *shénme*, what.
6. [叫] 叫 *jiào*, be called; 哪 *nǎ*, which; 名
míng, given name; 吗 *ma*, question
particle.
7. [四] 四 *sì*, four; 国 *guó*, country.
8. [女] 好 *hǎo*, good, well; 她 *tā*, she, her; 姓
xìng, be surnamed.

10. [少] 少 *shǎo*, few
11. [多] 多 *duō*, many/much
12. [文] 文 *wén*, script
13. [您] 您 *nín*, you (polite)
14. [我] 我 *wǒ*, I, me
15. [是] 是 *shì*, to be
16. [贵] 贵 *guì*, expensive
17. [白] 白 *bái*, white
18. [美] 美 *měi*, beautiful

5. [又] 汉 *Hàn*, ethnic Chinese;
友 *yǒu*, friend
6. [也] 他 *tā*, he, him;
她 *tā*, she, her
7. [人] 人 *rén*, people, person;
认 *rèn*, recognize
8. [小] 你 *nǐ*, you (singular);
少 *shǎo*, few, less

Review 1 (1–50)

A.

Pronouns

我 *wǒ*, I, me; 我的 *wǒde*, my, mine;
你 *nǐ*, you (singular); 你的 *nǐde*, your (singular);

他 *tā*, he, him; 他的 *tāde*, his;
她 *tā*, she, her; 她的 *tāde*, her, hers

Interrogative pronouns

什么 *shénme*, what; 哪 *nǎ*, which;

谁 *shéi/shuí*, who; 多少 *duōshao*, how many/much

Nouns

人 *rén*, person, people;
朋友 *péngyou*, friend;
中文 *Zhōngwén*, Chinese language;
英文 *Yīngwén*, English language;
汉语 *Hànyǔ*, Chinese language;

英语 *Yīngyǔ*, English language;
汉字 *Hànzì*, Chinese character;
中国 *Zhōngguó*, China;
英国 *Yīngguó*, the United Kingdom;
美国 *Měiguó*, the United States

Verbs

叫 *jiào*, be called; 姓 *xìng*, be surnamed;
是 *shì*, to be; 问 *wèn*, ask; 学 *xué*, learn, study;

写 *xiě*, write; 会 *huì*, be able to, can;
认识 *rènshi*, recognize

Numbers

一 *yī*, one; 二 *èr*, two; 三 *sān*, three; 四 *sì*, four; 五 *wù*, five; 六 *liù*, six; 七 *qī*, seven; 八 *bā*, eight; 九 *jiǔ*, nine; 十 *shí*, ten

Classifiers

个 *ge*, classifier

Noun phrases

中文名字 *Zhōngwén míngzi*, Chinese name;
英文名字 *Yīngwén míngzi*, English name;
中国朋友 *Zhōngguó péngyou*, Chinese friend;
英国朋友 *Yīngguó péngyou*, English friend;

美国朋友 *Měiguó péngyou*, American friend;
谁的朋友 *shéi/shuí de péngyou*, whose friend;
哪国人 *nǎguórén*, which nationality

Word/Sentence Puzzle 1

ACROSS (left to right)

- 2. (i) Chinese friend/s
(ii) can write
- 3. do/does not say
- 4. How many characters do you know?
- 8. Which is your country (polite)?

DOWN

- 1. What nationality are you?
- 2. United Kingdom
- 3. (i) become literate
(ii) What's your surname (polite)?
- 5. (i) quite a lot
(ii) yes
- 6. Can you speak Chinese?
- 7. American

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
1		英				你	
2	中	国	朋	友		会	写
3					不	说	
4	你	认	识	多	少	汉	字
5	是		字			语	
6	哪					吗	
7	国		您				美
8	人		贵	国	是	哪	国
9			姓		的		人

Quiz 6 (51–60)

A.

姐	个	妹	弟
美	她	们	和
国	还	是	两
人	没	有	哥

Word or phrase

- (i) 美国人
- (ii) 她们
- (iii) 还是
- (iv) 没有

Pinyin

Měiguórén
tāmen
háishi
méiyǒu

English meaning

American/s
they (females)
or
not have, none

B.

Pinyin

- (i) Wǒ yǒu liǎng ge mèimei.
- (ii) Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu jiějie?
- (iii) Tāmen shì Měiguórén.
- (iii) Tā yǒu gēge hé dìdì.

Characters

我有两个妹妹。
你有没有姐姐?
她们是美国人。
他有哥哥和弟弟。

Translation

I have two younger sisters.
Do you have an older sister (or older sisters)?
They are Americans. (females)
He has an older brother (or older brothers) and a younger brother (or younger brothers).

C.

dà 姐	second younger sister
二 妹	younger brother's wife
dà 哥	oldest sister
xiǎo 姐	sisters
姐妹	youngest sister
xiǎo 妹	Miss
弟 xī	disciple
tū 弟	oldest brother

(ii) 没 guānxi	twice
和 qī	it doesn't matter
还有	interesting
有 yìsi	famous
两 cì	peace
没 yìsi	boring
有名	still more
和 píng	amicable

Quiz 7 (61–70)

A.

家	口	姐	人
和	兄	妹	还
老	弟	爸	有
师	几	妈	哥

Word or phrase

- (i) 老师
- (ii) 兄弟
- (iii) 姐妹
- (iv) 还有

Pinyin

lǎoshī
xiōngdì
jiěmèi
hái yǒu

English meaning

teacher
brothers
sisters
still more

B. Pinyin

- (i) Wǒ jiā yǒu sì kǒu rén.
 (ii) Bàba, māma, jiějie hé wǒ.
 (iii) Wǒ māma shì lǎoshī.
 (iv) Nǐ yǒu jǐ ge xiōngdì jiěmèi?

Characters

我家有四口人。
 爸爸、妈妈、姐姐和我。
 我妈妈是老师。
 你有几个兄弟姐妹？

Translation

There are four of us in our family.
 My father, mother, older sister and myself.
 My mother is a teacher.
 How many brothers and sisters do you have?

C. (i)

家 tāng
 老大
 妈 mā
 师 shī
 兄弟
 妈 mā
 老 po
 爸 bā

wife
 master
 oldest sibling
 stepfather
 family
 stepmother
 father's married sister
 brother

(ii)

这 xiē
 家 wùshì
 这 yàng
 人口
 老 shì
 也 xǔ
 这 èr
 口 yīn

honest
 perhaps
 these
 in this way
 housework
 population
 accent
 here

Quiz 8 (71–80)

A.

怎	很	都	谢
样	爸	身	这
父	母	体	家
语	亲	还	汉

Word or phrase

- (i) 怎样
 (ii) 父母
 (iii) 母亲
 (iv) 身体

Pinyin

zěnyāng
 fùmǔ
 mǔqīn
 shēntǐ

English meaning

how
 parents
 mother
 health

B. Pinyin

- (i) Nǐ fùmǔ shēntǐ hǎo ma?
 (ii) Tāmen dōu hěn hǎo, xièxie.
 (iii) Nǐde Hànyǔ zěnmeyàng?
 (iii) Hái hǎo, xièxie.

Characters

你父母身体好吗？
 他们都很好，谢谢。
 你的汉语怎么样？
 还好，谢谢。

Translation

How are your parents (in terms of their health)?
 They are fine, thank you.
 How is your Chinese?
 (I'm managing) all right, thank you.

C. (i)

怎么样
 父母
 母语
 母的
 样
 huā 样
 亲 qī
 样 zi

parents
 variety
 appearance
 what's it like
 female (animal)
 relatives
 mother tongue
 same

(ii)

都 shǐ
 体 wēn
 体 lì
 身体
 身 cái
 身 gāo
 谢谢
 shǒu 都

health
 thank you
 body temperature
 strength
 capital
 city
 body height
 body shape

Quiz 9 (81–90)

A.

猫	女	哥	两
男	孩	那	有
母	里	儿	没
只	狗	子	家

Word or phrase

- (i) 男孩
 (ii) 女孩
 (iii) 那儿
 (iv) 儿子

Pinyin

nánhái
 nǚhái
 nàr
 érzi

English meaning

boy
 girl
 there
 son

B. Pinyin

- (i) Nǐ gēge yǒu méiyǒu hái zi?
 (ii) Wǒ gēge yǒu liǎng ge nǚ'ér.
 (iii) Nǐ jiā yǒu méiyǒu gǒu?
 (iii) Méiyǒu, wǒ jiā yǒu yī zhī māo.

Characters

你哥哥有没有孩子？
 我哥哥有两个女儿。
 你家有没有狗？
 没有，我家有一只猫。

Translation

Does your older brother have any children?
 My older brother has two daughters.
 Do you have a dog in your household?
 No, we don't. We have a cat.

- C. (i)
- | | |
|-----------|----------------|
| 儿子 | daughter |
| 哪儿 | strong woman |
| 女儿 | descendants |
| 子 sūn | where |
| 女 qiáng 人 | son |
| 女 shēng | boy friend |
| 男孩儿 | female student |
| 男朋友 | boy |

- (ii)
- | | |
|----------|--------------|
| 母狗 | here |
| 里 biān | female dog |
| 孩子 qī | men's toilet |
| 男 cèsuǒ | panda |
| xiǎo 猫 | over there |
| 那 biān | childish |
| 这里 | inside |
| dàxiǎo 猫 | kitten |

Quiz 10 (91–100)

- A.
- | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 狗 | 比 | 医 | 猫 |
| 大 | 小 | 生 | 学 |
| 工 | 岁 | 很 | 忙 |
| 作 | 女 | 里 | 男 |
- | Word or phrase | Pinyin | English meaning |
|----------------|----------|-----------------|
| (i) 大小 | dàxiǎo | size |
| (ii) 工作 | gōngzuò | work |
| (iii) 医生 | yīshēng | doctor |
| (iv) 很忙 | hěn máng | very busy |

- B.
- | Pinyin | Characters | Translation |
|------------------------------------|------------|--|
| (i) Nǐ jiějie zuò shénme gōngzuò? | 你姐姐做什么工作? | What work does your older sister do? |
| (ii) Tāde gōngzuò máng bu máng? | 她的工作忙不忙? | Is her work very busy? |
| (iii) Nǐ gēge bǐ nǐ dà jǐ suì? | 你哥哥比你大几岁? | What's the age difference between you and your older brother? |
| (iii) Nǐ mèimei bǐ nǐ xiǎo jǐ suì? | 你妹妹比你小几岁? | What's the age difference between you and your younger sister? |

- C. (i)
- | | |
|---------|----------------|
| 小 shí | age in years |
| 大 shēng | competition |
| 岁 shù | hour |
| 比 jiào | everybody |
| 比不上 | compare |
| 比 sài | puppy |
| 小狗 | not as good as |
| 大 jiā | loudly |
- (ii)
- | | |
|-----------|--------------------|
| 工 zī | help |
| 生 cǐ | cook |
| 医生 | do business |
| 做 cài | wage/salary |
| bāng 忙 | new words |
| 做 shēngyì | university student |
| 工作 | doctor |
| 大学生 | work |

Character Building 2 (51–100)

- A. 1. [一] 哥 gē, older brother; 两 liǎng, two (of something).
2. [丿] 生 shēng, birth, life; 九 jiǔ, nine; 么 me, particle.
3. [讠] 谢 xiè, thank; 谁 shéi/shuí, who; 语 yǔ, language; 说 shuō, speak; 认 rèn, recognize; 识 shí, know.
4. [八] 八 bā, eight; 弟 dì, younger brother.
5. [亻] 们 -men, plural suffix; 作 zuò, do; 体 tǐ, body; 做 zuò, make.
6. [阝] 那 nà, that; 都 dōu, all.
7. [彳] 没 méi, not have; 汉 Hân, ethnic Chinese.
8. [宀] 家 jiā, home; 字 zì, character, script.
9. [辶] 这 zhè, this; 还 hái, still.
10. [小] 小 xiǎo, small; 少 shǎo, few.
11. [口] 口 kǒu, mouth; 只 zhī, classifier; 兄 xiōng, older brother (formal); 名 míng, given name.
12. [犭] 狗 gǒu, dog; 猫 māo, cat.
13. [女] 女 nǚ, female; 妈 mā, mother; 她 tā, she/her; 姐 jiě, older sister; 妹 mèi, younger sister.
14. [子] 子 zǐ, son/child; 学 xué, study learn; 孩 hái, child.
15. [心] 怎 zěn, how; 您 nín, you (polite).
16. [父] 父 fù, father (formal); 爸 bà, father.
17. [月] 有 yǒu, to have, to exist; 朋 péng, friend.

- B. 1. [一] 也 yě, also
 2. [医] 医 yī, treat, cure
 3. [儿] 儿 ěr, son
 4. [几] 几 jǐ, how many
 5. [力] 男 nán, male
 6. [忙] 忙 máng, busy
 7. [工] 工 gōng, work
 8. [巾] 师 shī, teacher
 9. [山] 岁 suì, age in years
10. [很] 很 hěn, very
 11. [样] 样 yàng, appearance
 12. [比] 比 bǐ, compare to
 13. [立] 亲 qīn, kin
 14. [母] 母 mǔ, mother (formal)
 15. [老] 老 lǎo, old
 16. [身] 身 shēn, body
 17. [里] 里 lǐ, inside
- C. 1. [子] 子 zǐ, child; 学 xué, study; 字 zì, character; 孩 hái, child; 好 hǎo, good.
 2. [儿] 儿 ěr, son; 兄 xiōng, older brother (formal).
 3. [也] 也 yě, also; 她 tā, she/her; 他 tā, he/him.

Review 2 (51–100)

A.

Pronouns

我们 wǒmen, we/us; 我们的 wǒmen de, our/ours;
 你们 nǐmen, you/your (plural); 你们的 nǐmen de, your/yours;
 他们 tāmen, they (including females);

他们的 tāmen de, their/theirs (including female);
 她们 tāmen, they (female); 她们的 tāmen de, their/theirs (females).

Demonstrative pronouns

这 zhè, this; 这些 zhèxiē, these; 这儿 zhèr, here; 这里 zhèlǐ, here; 那 nà, that; 那些 nàxiē, those; 那儿 nàr, there; 那里 nàlǐ, there.

Interrogative pronouns

谁的 shéi/shuí de, whose; 哪儿 nǎr, where; 哪里 nǎlǐ, where; 怎么 zěnmē, how; 怎样 zěnyàng, how, what; 怎么样 zěnmeyàng, what's it like; 几 jǐ, how many; 几个 jǐ ge, how many of (something).

Nouns

父亲 fùqīn, father (formal); 母亲 mǔqīn, mother (formal); 父母 fùmǔ, parents (formal); 哥哥 gēge, older brother; 姐姐 jiějie, older sister; 弟弟 dìdì, younger brother; 妹妹 mèimei, younger sister; 兄弟 xiōngdì, brothers; 姐妹 jiěmèi, sisters; 家 jiā, family, home; 国家 guójiā, nation; 大家 dàjiā, everybody; 人家 rénjia, other people; 孩子 háizi, child; 儿子 ěrzi, son; 女儿 nǚ ěr, daughter; 身体 shēntǐ, health; 老师 lǎoshī, teacher; 医生 yīshēng, doctor; 学生 xuésheng, student; 狗 gǒu, dog; 猫 māo, cat; 岁 suì, age in years; 工作 gōngzuò, work.

Verbs

有 yǒu, have; 没有 méiyǒu, not have; 谢 xiè, thank;
 做 zuò, do, make.

Adjectives

男 nán, male; 女 nǚ, female; 大 dà, big;
 小 xiǎo, small; 忙 máng, busy.

Adverbs

很 hěn, very; 比 bǐ, compare.

Conjunctions

还 hái, still; 也 yě, also; 都 dōu, all

Numbers

两 liǎng, a couple

Classifiers

口 kǒu (for family members);
 只 zhī (for animals, birds etc.).

Noun phrases

中国人口 Zhōngguó rén kǒu, population of China; 美国人口 Měiguó rén kǒu, population of the United States;
 英国人口 Yīngguó rén kǒu, population of the United Kingdom; 小学生 xiǎoxuésheng, primary school pupil;
 中学生 zhōngxuésheng, secondary school pupil; 大学生 dàxuésheng, university student;
 好学生 hǎo xuésheng, good student; 好朋友 hǎo péngyou, good friend; 老朋友 lǎo péngyou, old friend;
 男朋友 nǎnpéngyou, boy friend; 女朋友 nǚpéngyou, girl friend.

Word/Sentence Puzzle 2

ACROSS (left to right)

2. How many brothers and sisters do you have?
5. He speaks Chinese better than me.
7. (i) no
7. (ii) two jobs
9. boy
10. many primary school pupils and secondary school students
12. This dog is big.
13. kitten

DOWN

1. His parents are in good health.
3. Can you speak Chinese
4. female student
6. I have two cats and a dog.
8. second youngest brother
9. (i) male student;
9. (ii) size
10. youngest sister

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
1								二		小
2			你	有	几	个	兄	弟	姐	妹
3			会							
4			说							
5	他	说	汉	语	比	我	说	的	好	
6	父		语			有				
7	母		不	是		两	个	工	作	
8	身		会			只				
9	体			女		猫			男	孩
10	很	多	小	学	生	和	中	学	生	
11	好			生		一				
12					这	只	狗	很	大	
13						狗			小	猫

Quiz 11 (101-110)

A.

工	忙	作	吃
少	多	了	早
现	在	分	饭
几	点	钟	半

Word or phrase

- (i) 现在
- (ii) 几点钟
- (iii) 分钟
- (iv) 吃早饭

Pinyin

xiànzài
jǐ diǎnzhōng
fēnzhōng
chī zǎofān

English meaning

now
What time is it?
minute
eat breakfast

B.

Pinyin

- (i) Xiànzài jǐ diǎnzhōng le?
- (ii) Xiànzài liùdiǎnbàn le.
- (iii) Nǐmen jǐ diǎn chī zǎofān?
- (iii) Wǒmen qīdiǎnbàn chī zǎofān.

Characters

现在几点钟了?
现在六点半了。
你们几点吃早饭?
我们七点半吃早饭。

Translation

What's the time now?
It's now 6:30.
When do you eat (your) breakfast?
We eat breakfast at 7:30.

C.

(i)	现 jīn	minute
	biǎo 现	quarter hour
	分钟	cash
	一 kē 钟	behavior
	两点钟	hour
	钟 tóu	2 o'clock
	在家	difference
	分 bié	at home

(ii)

一半	half
半 tiān	early morning
吃苦	food
吃不下	bear hardship
早 chēn	boiled rice
饭 guǎnr	a long time
饭 cǎi	unable to eat
mǐ 饭	restaurant

Quiz 12 (111-120)

A.

起	时	跑	步
床	晚	上	早
工	现	午	下
在	候	里	分

Word or phrase

- (i) 起床
- (ii) 跑步
- (iii) 晚上
- (iv) 上午

Pinyin

qǐchuáng
pǎobù
wǎnshàng
shàngwǔ

English meaning

get out of bed
jog
evening
a.m.

- B. Pinyin**
- (i) Nǐ shénme shíhòu qǐchuáng? 你什么时候起床?
 (ii) Wǒ qīdiǎnzhōng qǐchuáng. 我七点钟起床。
 (iii) Nǐ pǎo bu pǎobù? 你跑不跑步?
 (iv) Pǎo, yǒu shíhòu pǎo. 跑, 有时候跑。
- Characters**
- 你什么时候起床?
 我七点钟起床。
 你跑不跑步?
 跑, 有时候跑。
- Translation**
- What time do you get up?
 I get up at 7 o'clock.
 Do you jog?
 Yes, I do. Sometimes I jog.
- C. (i)**
- 时 jiān — timetable
 时 kèbiǎo — climate
 什么时候 — time
 时候 — what time
 有时候 — lunch
 上午 — afternoon
 下午 — a.m.
 午饭 — sometimes
- (ii)**
- 下 yǔ — improve
 下 bān — evening meal
 进 bù — go to school
 午 shuì — race
 上学 — together
 跑 — raining
 晚饭 — finish work
 一起 — afternoon nap

Quiz 13 (121–130)

- A.**
- | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 日 | 今 | 晚 | 吃 |
| 明 | 天 | 月 | 看 |
| 有 | 空 | 儿 | 电 |
| 做 | 作 | 生 | 影 |
- Word or phrase**
- (i) 今晚
 (ii) 明天
 (iii) 有空儿
 (iv) 看电影
- Pinyin**
- jīnwǎn
 míngtiān
 yǒu kōng'ér
 kàn diànyǐng
- English meaning**
- tonight
 tomorrow
 have free time
 see a movie
- B. Pinyin**
- (i) Jīntiān shì Jiǔyuè-shíwǔrì.
 (ii) Míngtiān shì wǒde shēngrì.
 (iii) Jīnwǎn nǐ yǒu kōng'ér ma?
 (iii) Wǒmen kàn diànyǐng zěnmeyàng?
- Characters**
- 今天是九月十五日。
 明天是我的生日。
 今晚你有空儿吗?
 我们看电影怎么样?
- Translation**
- Today is September 15th.
 Tomorrow is my birthday.
 Do you have free time tonight?
 What if we see a movie?
- C. (i)**
- 年 — understand
 天 — date
 才 — obvious
 明 — talent
 明 — diary
 日 — weather
 日 — next month
 下个月 — last year
- (ii)**
- 年 qīng — read
 空 qì — television
 空 tiáo — computer
 看 shū — young
 看 jiàn — air
 电 nǎo — photocopy
 电 shì — air-conditioning
 影 yīn — see

Quiz 14 (131–140)

- A.**
- | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 星 | 每 | 都 | 做 |
| 期 | 昨 | 晚 | 买 |
| 了 | 去 | 天 | 东 |
| 进 | 城 | 里 | 西 |
- Word or phrase**
- (i) 星期
 (ii) 昨晚
 (iii) 买东西
 (iv) 进城
- Pinyin**
- xīngqī
 zuówǎn
 mǎi dōngxi
 jìnchéng
- English meaning**
- week
 last night
 do shopping
 go to the city
- B. Pinyin**
- (i) Zuótiān wǒ jìnchéng le.
 (ii) Nǐ jìnchéng zuò shénme le?
 (iii) Wǒ qù mǎi dōngxi le.
 (iii) Měi Xīngqīliù wǒ dōu jìnchéng.
- Characters**
- 昨天我进城了。
 你进城做什么了?
 我去买东西了。
 每星期六我都进城。
- Translation**
- Yesterday I went to the city.
 What did you do in the city?
 I did some shopping.
 Every Saturday I go to the city.

- C. (i)
- | | |
|--------|----------------|
| jià 期 | in progress |
| 去 chù | holiday |
| dào 期 | go to the city |
| 进 lái | city |
| 进 bù | expire |
| 进 xing | come in |
| 进城 | place to go |
| 城 shì | improvement |

- (ii)
- | | |
|---------|-----------------|
| 买不起 | thing |
| 买卖 | Western meal |
| 东 nányà | can't afford |
| 东 bian | business |
| 东西 | Western-style |
| 西 fāng | east side |
| 西 cān | South-East Asia |
| 西 shì | the West |

Quiz 15 (141–150)

- A.
- | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 一 | 百 | 城 | 进 |
| 钱 | 商 | 便 | 宜 |
| 件 | 店 | 块 | 毛 |
| 西 | 东 | 生 | 衣 |
- | Word or phrase | Pinyin | English meaning |
|----------------|-----------|-----------------|
| (i) 一百 | yībǎi | one hundred |
| (ii) 商店 | shāngdiàn | shop |
| (iii) 便宜 | piányi | inexpensive |
| (iv) 毛衣 | máoyī | woolen sweater |

- B.
- | Pinyin | Characters | Translation |
|---|------------|---|
| (i) Chéngli shāngdiàn dōngxī guì ma? | 城里商店东西贵吗? | Are the shops in the city expensive? |
| (ii) Zhè jiàn máoyī hěn piányi. | 这件毛衣很便宜。 | This woolen sweater is inexpensive. |
| (iii) Liǎngbǎi kuài qián yí jiàn, guì ma? | 两百块钱一件贵吗? | Is it expensive to pay \$200 (for a garment)? |
| (iii) Wǒ mǎi liǎng jiàn, piányi diǎnr? | 我买两件便宜点儿? | Would it be cheaper if I bought two? |

- C. (i)
- | | |
|---------|-----------------|
| 文 jù 店 | clothes |
| 文件 | woolen sweater |
| shū 店 | stationery shop |
| 衣 fu | document |
| 毛 bī | writing brush |
| 毛衣 | coat hanger |
| 五毛 qián | book shop |
| 衣 jiā | 50 cents |
- (ii)
- | | |
|---------|--------------------|
| 便宜 | wallet, purse |
| fāng 便 | inexpensive |
| fāng 块字 | commerce |
| 百 huò | convenient |
| 有钱 | discuss |
| 钱 bāo | merchandise |
| 商 yè | well-off |
| 商 liang | Chinese characters |

Character Building 3 (101–150)

- A. 1. [一] 上 shàng, above; 下 xià, below; 东 dōng, east; 百 bǎi, hundred.
2. [丿] 午 wǔ, noon; 年 nián, year.
3. [乚] 了 le, particle; 买 mǎi, buy.
4. [乚] 电 diàn, electricity; 也 yě, also.
5. [一] 商 shāng, merchant; 六 liù, six.
6. [八] 半 bàn, half; 分 fēn, minute.
7. [人] 人 rén, people; 今 jīn, present, now; 会 huì, be able to, would; 个 ge, classifier.
8. [亻] 候 hòu, wait; 件 jiàn, classifier; 便 biàn, convenient; 们 -men, plural suffix.
9. [口] 吃 chī, eat; 哪 nǎ, which; 名 míng, name; 吗 ma, question particle.
10. [宀] 宜 yí, appropriate; 字 zì, character, script.
11. [广] 床 chuáng, bed; 店 diàn, shop.
12. [辶] 进 jìn, enter; 还 hái/huán, still/return; 这 zhè, this.
13. [土] 在 zài, at; 城 chéng, city; 块 kuài, classifier.
14. [日] 日 rì, day; 早 zǎo, early; 明 míng, bright; 晚 wǎn, evening; 昨 zuó, yesterday; 星 xīng, star; 时 shí, time.
15. [月] 月 yuè, month; 期 qī, period.
16. [钅] 钟 zhōng, clock; 钱 qián, money.
17. [母] 每 měi, every; 母 mǔ, mother (formal).
- B. 1. [厶] 去 qù, go
2. [饣] 饭 fàn, meal
3. [大] 天 tiān, day
4. [彡] 影 yǐng, shadow
5. [止] 步 bù, step
6. [毛] 毛 mǎo, hair
7. [宀] 空 kōng, empty
8. [衣] 衣 yī, clothing
9. [西] 西 xī, west
10. [目] 看 kàn, see
11. [足] 跑 pǎo, run
12. [走] 起 qǐ, rise

- C. 1. [工] 工 *gōng*, work; 空 *kōng/kòng*, empty/leisure time.
 2. [土] 去 *qù*, go; 在 *zài*, at.
 3. [木] 床 *chuáng*, bed; 样 *yàng*, appearance.

4. [日] 早 *zǎo*, early; 影 *yǐng*, shadow; 星 *xīng*, star.
 5. [月] 期 *qī*, period; 明 *míng*, bright.
 6. [且] 宜 *yí*, appropriate; 姐 *jiě*, older sister.
 7. [乍] 昨 *zuó*, yesterday; 怎 *zěn*, how.

Review 3 (101–150)

Interrogative pronouns

什么时候 *shénme shíhou*, what time.

Nouns

天 *tiān*, day; 日 *rì*, day; 星期 *xīngqī*, week; 月 *yuè*, month; 年 *nián*, year; 钱 *qián*, money; 床 *chuáng*, bed; 城 *chéng*, city; 学期 *xuéqī*, semester; 日期 *rìqī*, date; 商店 *shāngdiàn*, shop; 东西 *dōngxi*, thing;

文件 *wénjiàn*, document; 毛衣 *máoyī*, woolen sweater; 电影 *diànyǐng*, movie; 空儿 *kòng*, free time; 小时 *xiǎoshí*, hour; 分钟 *fēnzhōng*, minute.

Verbs

吃 *chī*, eat; 买 *mǎi*, buy; 看 *kàn*, see; 去 *qù*, go; 跑步 *pǎobù*, jog; 起床 *qǐchuáng*, get out of bed.

Numbers

半 *bàn*, half; 百 *bǎi*, hundred.

Classifiers

块 *kuài*, piece; 毛 *máo*, ten cents unit; 件 *jiàn*, item.

Adjectives

早 *zǎo*, early; 晚 *wǎn*, late; 好吃 *hǎochī*, delicious; 有钱 *yǒuqián*, rich; 便宜 *piányi*, inexpensive; 空 *kōng*, empty.

Time words (Adverbs)

现在 *xiànzài*, now; 昨天 *zuótiān*, yesterday; 今天 *jīntiān*, today; 明天 *míngtiān*, tomorrow; 上午 *shàngwǔ*, a.m.; 下午 *xiàwǔ*, afternoon; 早上 *zǎoshang*, morning; 晚上 *wǎnshang*, evening; 每天 *měitiān*, every day; 今年 *jīnnián*, this year;

去年 *qùnián*, last year; 明年 *míngnián*, next year; 有时候 *yǒu shíhou*, sometimes; 上(个)星期 *shàng (ge) xīngqī*, last week; 这(个)星期 *zhè (ge) xīngqī*, this week; 下(个)星期 *xià (ge) xīngqī*, next week.

Adverbs

一起 *yìqǐ*, together; 一块儿 *yíkuàir*, together.

Prepositions

在 *zài*, at.

Particles

了 *le*, particle.

Word/Sentence Puzzle 3

ACROSS (left to right)

- Today is September 25th.
- What do you do in the evening?
- We go to the city every Sunday.
- What time do you get up every day?
- I'm doing some shopping tomorrow.

DOWN

- I'm free this evening.
- Do you go jogging every day?
- Did you see a movie yesterday?
- week
- Things are very cheap.
- (i) \$500 (ii) Where is the shop?
- How much are woolen sweaters in the city?

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
1	今	天	是	九	月	二	十	五	日	
2	天							百		
3	晚	上	你	做	什	么		块		
4	上									
5	我	们	每	个	星	期	天	都	进	城
6	有				期					里
7	空			昨						的
8		你	每	天	几	点	起	床		毛
9		每		你						衣
10	明	天	我	去	买	东	西			多
11		都		看		西		商		少
12		去		电		很		店		钱
13		跑		影		便		在		
14		步		了		宜		哪		
15		吗		吗				儿		

Quiz 16 (151-160)

- A.

元	太	贵	了
千	卖	怎	买
电	万	么	东
脑	就	样	西
- Word or phrase**
- (i) 太贵了
(ii) 电脑
(iii) 怎么样
(iv) 买东西
- Pinyin**
- Tài guì le!
diànnǎo
zěnmeyàng
mǎi dōngxi
- English meaning**
- It's too expensive!
computer
How is it?
shopping
- B. **Pinyin**
- (i) Zhè tái diànnǎo mài duōshao qián?
(ii) Yīwàn-èrqiān yuán
(iii) Tài guì le, jiù yīwàn kuài ba.
(iii) Yīwàn-líng-bābǎi, zěnmeyàng?
- Characters**
- 这台电脑卖多少钱?
一万二千元。
太贵了, 就一万块吧。
一万零八百怎么样?
- Translation**
- How much is this computer?
It's ¥12,000 (Chinese dollars).
That's too expensive, what about ¥10,000?
What about ¥10,800?
- C. (i)

电脑	Taiwan
台 jiē	10 million
台 wān	just in case
卖 zuò	computer
卖 lì	exert one's strength
一千万	stairs
百万	draw large audiences
万一	million
- (ii)

美元	A.D.
元 dàn	too expensive
gōng 元	American dollars
太 jíquán	New Year's Day
太 guì	small change
太 yāng	Taichi
zōu 吧	sun
零钱	let's go

Quiz 17 (161-170)

- A.

帮	脑	卖	生
助	零	词	典
它	练	学	就
本	习	读	书
- Word or phrase**
- (i) 帮助
(ii) 词典
(iii) 练习
(iv) 读书
- Pinyin**
- bāngzhù
cídiǎn
liànxí
dúshū
- English meaning**
- help
dictionary
practice
study
- B. **Pinyin**
- (i) Zhè shì yì běn shénme shū?
(ii) Zhè búshì shū, yě búshì cídiǎn.
(iii) Zhè shì Hànzì dú-xiě liànxībēn.
(iii) Tā bāngzhù wǒ xué Hànzì.
- Characters**
- 这是一本什么书?
这不是书, 也不是词典。
这是汉字读写练习本。
它帮助我学汉字。
- Translation**
- What type of book is this?
This is neither a book nor a dictionary.
This is a character workbook.
It helps me to learn characters.
- C. (i)

习 sù	calligraphy
练习本	dictionary
书店	custom
yuè 读	bookshelves
书 jià	workbook
书 fǎ	reading
生词	new words
词典	book store
- (ii)

本 dī	skills
本 líng	assistant
本 lái	typical
帮助	local
助手	help
典 xīng	reading text
读书	study
读本	originally

Quiz 18 (171-180)

- A.

院	前	对	父
旁	边	母	面
公	后	校	园
西	家	生	学
- Word or phrase**
- (i) 前边
(ii) 旁边
(iii) 母校
(iv) 校园
- Pinyin**
- qiánbian
pángbiān
mǔxiào
xiàoyuán
- English meaning**
- in front of, ahead
next to, adjacent
Alma Mater
campus

B. Pinyin

- (i) Qiánmiàn shì yīyuàn.
 (ii) Xuéxiào hòumiàn shì gōngyuán.
 (iii) Diànyǐngyuàn zài nǎr?
 (iii) Diànyǐngyuàn zài xuéxiào duìmiàn.

Characters

前面是医院。
 学校后面是公园。
 电影院在哪儿?
 电影院在学校对面。

Translation

There's a hospital ahead.
 At the back of the school is a park.
 Where's the cinema?
 The cinema is opposite the school.

C. (i)

前面 outside
 后面 above, on top of
 两旁 seaside
 海边 ahead, in front of
 上边 I'm sorry
 外边 opposite
 对不起 behind, at the back
 对面 on both sides

(ii)

前天 afterwards
 后天 cinema
 以后 the day after tomorrow
 医院 park
 电影院 the day before yesterday
 学校 hospital
 面子 respect, 'face'
 公园 school

Quiz 19 (181-190)

A.

两	条	街	离
习	就	一	远
边	过	直	再
往	前	走	见

Word or phrase

- (i) 两条街
 (ii) 一直走
 (iii) 再见
 (iv) 往前走

Pinyin

liǎng tiáo jiē
 yízhí zǒu
 zàijiàn
 wǎng qián zǒu

English meaning

two streets
 go straight ahead
 goodbye
 go straight ahead

B. Pinyin

- (i) Qǐngwèn, qù yīyuàn zěnmé zǒu?
 (ii) Yízhí wǎng qián zǒu.
 (iii) Lǐ zhèr yuǎn ma?
 (iv) Bù yuǎn, guò liǎng tiáo jiē jiù shì.

Characters

请问，去医院怎么走？
 一直往前走。
 离这儿远吗？
 不远，过两条街就是。

Translation

Excuse me, how do you get to the hospital?
 Go straight from here.
 Is it far from here?
 It's not far, cross two streets and you are there.

C. (i)

离 kāi long term
 远 jìn until
 长 cháng distance
 直 dào depart
 往往 often
 走 lù out of fashion
 走 yùn lucky
 过时 on foot

(ii)

面条 laugh at (me or us)
 条 li again and again
 再 cì meet, see
 再三 noodles
 上街 go shopping
 见面 once again
 见识 methodical
 见 xiào experience, knowledge

Quiz 20 (191-200)

A.

能	过	右	手
过	左	手	里
近	用	进	马
远	外	面	路

Word or phrase

- (i) 右手
 (ii) 左手
 (iii) 马路
 (iv) 外面

Pinyin

yòushǒu
 zuǒshǒu
 mǎlù
 wàimian

English meaning

right hand
 left hand
 road
 outside

B. Pinyin

- (i) Xuéxiào lí zhèr yuǎn bu yuǎn?
 (ii) Hěn jìn, guòle mǎlù jiù shì.
 (iii) Nǐ néng yòng zuǒshǒu xiězì ma?
 (iv) Bù néng, wǒ zhǐ néng yòng yòushǒu.

Characters

学校离这儿远不远？
 很近，过了马路就是。
 你能用左手写字吗？
 不能，我只能用右手。

Translation

Is the school far from here?
 It's very near, after you cross the road, you're there.
 Can you write with your left hand?
 No, I can't. I can only write with my right hand.

C. (i)

附近 — capable
近 — nearby
外面 — outside
外国人 — intersection
马 — foreigner
马上 — immediately
路口 — careless
能 — recently

(ii)

用 — formalities
用 — craftsmanship
左边 — the left
右 — toilet paper
手 — right side
手 — merely
手 — use
只是 — attentively

Character Building 4 (151–200)

A. 1. [一] 再 *zài*, again; 万 *wàn*, ten thousand;
面 *miàn*, surface.

2. [丿] 千 *qiān*, thousand; 后 *hòu*, behind.

3. [习] 习 *xí*, practice; 书 *shū*, book.

4. [一] 离 *lí*, distance from; 就 *jiù*, then.

5. [讠] 读 *dú*, read; 词 *cí*, word.

6. [二] 二 *èr*, two; 元 *yuán*, dollar.

7. [十] 直 *zhí*, straight; 卖 *mài*, sell.

8. [八] 典 *diǎn*, standard; 前 *qián*, in front of;
公 *gōng*, public.

9. [厶] 能 *néng*, can; 去 *qù*, go.

10. [又] 对 *duì*, correct; 友 *yǒu*, friend.

11. [力] 助 *zhù*, assistance; 男 *nán*, male.

12. [宀] 它 *tā*, it; 字 *zì*, character, script.

B. 1. [卜] 外 *wài*, outside

2. [阝] 院 *yuàn*, courtyard

3. [纟] 条 *tiáo*, classifier

4. [纟] 练 *liàn*, practice

5. [马] 马 *mǎ*, horse

C. 1. [卖] 卖 *mài*, sell; 读 *dú*, read

2. [寸] 对 *duì*, correct; 过 *guò*, pass

3. [力] 边 *biān*, side; 助 *zhù*, assist

13. [辶] 远 *yuǎn*, far; 过 *guò*, pass; 边 *biān*, side;
近 *jìn*, near.

14. [工] 工 *gōng*, work; 左 *zuǒ*, the left.

15. [大] 太 *tài*, extreme; 天 *tiān*, day.

16. [口] 台 *tái*, platform; 右 *yòu*, the right.

17. [口] 园 *yuán*, garden; 国 *guó*, country.

18. [巾] 帮 *bāng*, help; 师 *shī*, teacher.

19. [彳] 往 *wǎng*, toward; 街 *jiē*, street.

20. [木] 本 *běn*, root; 校 *xiào*, school.

21. [月] 脑 *nǎo*, brain; 期 *qī*, period.

22. [走] 走 *zǒu*, walk; 起 *qǐ*, rise.

23. [足] 路 *lù*, road; 跑 *pǎo*, run.

6. [方] 旁 *páng*, next to

7. [手] 手 *shǒu*, hand

8. [用] 用 *yòng*, use

9. [雨] 雨 *yǔ*, rain

4. [月] 脑 *nǎo*, brain; 明 *míng*, bright

5. [巴] 吧 *ba*, suggestion particle; 爸 *bà*, father

6. [口] 右 *yòu*, the right; 名 *míng*, name

REVIEW 4 (151–200)

Pronouns

它 *tā*, it; 它们 *tāmen*, they.

Nouns

脑 *nǎo*, brain; 电脑 *diànnǎo*, computer;
零钱 *língqián*, small change; 读本 *dúběn*, reading text;
练习本 *liànxībēn*, workbook; 书 *shū*, book;
书店 *shūdiàn*, book store; 词 *cí*, word;
生词 *shēngcí*, new words; 词典 *cídiǎn*, dictionary;
帮手 *bāngshǒu*, assistant; 助手 *zhùshǒu*, assistant;
面子 *miànzi*, face (respect); 医院 *yīyuàn*, hospital;
电影院 *diànyǐngyuàn*, cinema; 学校 *xuéxiào*, school;

校园 *xiàoyuán*, campus; 母校 *mǔxiào*, Alma Mater;
公里 *gōnglǐ*, kilometer; 公园 *gōngyuán*, park;
远近 *yuǎnjìn*, distance; 面条 *miàntiáo*, noodles;
街 *jiē*, street; 见识 *jiànshi*, experience, knowledge;
外国人 *wàiguórén*, foreigner; 外人 *wàirén*, stranger;
路 *lù*, road; 马路 *mǎlù*, sealed road;
路口 *lùkǒu*, turning, intersection; 手 *shǒu*, hand.

Verbs

卖 *mài*, sell; 读 *dú*, read; 读书 *dúshū*, study;
练 *liàn*, practice; 练习 *liànxí*, practice; 学习 *xuéxí*, study;
帮 *bāng*, help; 帮助 *bāngzhù*, help; 帮忙 *bāngmáng*,

help; 住院 *zhùyuàn*, be hospitalized; 走 *zǒu*, walk; 过 *guò*, pass; 上街 *shàngjiē*, go shopping; 见 *jiàn*, see; 见面 *jiànmiàn*, see; 用 *yòng*, use.

Auxiliary verbs

能 *néng*, possible.

Classifiers

台 *tái*, (for equipment); 元 *yuán* (for dollar unit);
件 *jiàn* (for clothing); 条 *tiáo* (for long and slender objects).

Location words

前 *qián*, in front of; 后 *hòu*, behind;
前面 *qiánmian*, in front of; 后面 *hòumian*, behind;
前边 *qiánbian*, in front of; 两旁 *liǎngpáng*, on both sides;
旁边 *pángbian*, next to; 上边 *shàngbian*, above;

Time words (Adverbs)

前天 *qiántiān*, the day before yesterday; 后天 *hòutiān*, the day after tomorrow; 以后 *yǐhòu*, afterwards.

Adverbs

千万 *qiānwàn*, be sure to; 就 *jiù*, then; 一直 *yízhí*, straight; 直到 *zhídào*, until; 往往 *wǎngwǎng*, often; 再 *zài*, again;
再三 *zàisān*, repeatedly; 马上 *mǎshàng*, immediately; 只 *zhǐ*, only; 只是 *zhǐshì*, merely.

Conjunction

不过 *búguò*, but, however.

Particles

吧 *ba*, (for suggestion).

Numbers

零 *líng*, zero; 千 *qiān*, thousand; 万 *wàn*, ten thousand;
百万 *bǎiwàn*, million; 一千万 *yìqiānwàn*, ten million.

Adjectives

远 *yuǎn*, far; 直 *zhí*, straight; 近 *jìn*, near;
对 *duì*, correct; 过时 *guòshí*, be out of fashion.外边 *wàibian*, outside; 对面 *duìmiàn*, opposite;
外面 *wàimian*, outside; 路上 *lùshang*, on the road or
journey; 左 *zuǒ*, the left; 左边 *zuǒbian*, left hand side;
右 *yòu*, the right; 右边 *yòubian*, right hand side.

Prepositions

离 *lí*, distance from.

Word/Sentence Puzzle 4

ACROSS (left to right)

1. She can't use a computer.
4. There's a big shop in front of my house.
7. (i) left hand side
7. (ii) Are you going to school today?
8. assistant
9. outside
10. dictionary
12. Is the cinema far from here?
14. eat noodles

DOWN

2. I can write with my left hand.
4. next to the hospital
5. I'm asking you for a favor.
6. She has a dog in her house
7. Where are we meeting tomorrow?
9. I'm sorry.
10. The shop is outside the school (campus).
11. bookshop

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
1						她	不	会	用	电	脑
2						家					
3						里					书
4		我	家	前	面	有	一	个	大	商	店
5		能				狗				店	
6		用			请		明			在	
7		左	边		你	今	天	去	学	校	吗
8	助	手			帮		我			园	
9		写			忙		们			外	面
10		字	典				在			边	
11				医			哪		对		
12		电	影	院	离	这	儿	远	不	远	
13				旁			见		起		
14				边		吃	面	条			

Quiz 21 (201–210)

- A.

怎	么	走	里
中	到	下	车
国	坐	地	铁
城	住	从	上
- | Word or phrase | Pinyin | English meaning |
|----------------|---------------|----------------------------|
| (i) 怎么走 | zěnmě zǒu | How do you get to ...? |
| (ii) 中国城 | Zhōngguóchéng | Chinatown |
| (iii) 下车 | xiàchē | get off from the bus/train |
| (iv) 坐地铁 | zuò dìtiě | take the subway |
- B. **Pinyin**
- | |
|--|
| (i) Wǒ zhù zài chénglǐ. |
| (ii) Dào nǐ jiā zěnmě zǒu? |
| (iii) Nǐ cóng zhèr zuò dìtiě. |
| (iv) Dào Zhōngguóchéng xiàchē jiù shì. |
- Characters**
- 我住在城里。
到你家怎么走？
你从这儿坐地铁。
到中国城下车就是。
- Translation**
- I live in the city.
How do I get to your house?
You take the subway from here.
Get off at Chinatown (station) and you're there.
- C. (i)
- | |
|------------|
| 从前 |
| 地 fāng |
| 地 tú |
| 地下 |
| 铁路 |
| 地铁 |
| huǒ 车 |
| 公 gōngqì 车 |
- | |
|---------------|
| railroad |
| train |
| formerly |
| place |
| subway |
| bus |
| map |
| on the ground |
- (ii)
- | |
|-----------|
| 北京 |
| 北 fāng |
| 到期 |
| 京 jù |
| 南 bù |
| 住 zhái |
| 坐 wèi |
| 北 Měizhōu |
- | |
|---------------|
| the north |
| seat |
| southern part |
| Beijing |
| expire |
| Beijing opera |
| North America |
| residence |

Quiz 22 (211–220)

- A.

多	过	时	间
久	北	已	经
还	来	京	南
冷	喜	欢	长
- | Word or phrase | Pinyin | English meaning |
|----------------|---------|------------------|
| (i) 多久 | duō jiǔ | how long? (time) |
| (ii) 时间 | shíjiān | time |
| (iii) 已经 | yǐjīng | already |
| (iv) 喜欢 | xǐhuan | be fond of |
- B. **Pinyin**
- | |
|--------------------------------------|
| (i) Nǐ lái Běijīng duō jiǔ le? |
| (ii) Yǐjīng hěn cháng shíjiān le. |
| (iii) Nǐ xǐhuan Běijīng ma? |
| (iv) Hái hǎo, dōngtiān lěng yìdiǎnr. |
- Characters**
- 你来北京多久了？
已经很长时间了。
你喜欢北京吗？
还好，冬天冷一点儿。
- Translation**
- How long have you been in Beijing?
(I've) already been here for quite a long time.
Do you like Beijing?
It's okay, (but) it's a bit cold in winter.
- C. (i)
- | |
|---------|
| 从来 |
| 来回 |
| 不久 |
| 已经 |
| 经常 |
| 经过 |
| 长大 |
| 长 jiāng |
- | |
|-------------------|
| grow up |
| the Yangtze River |
| all along |
| pass through |
| a return journey |
| not long |
| already |
| often |
- (ii)
- | |
|--------|
| 时间 |
| 中间 |
| fāng 间 |
| 喜欢 |
| 欢喜 |
| 欢 yīng |
| 冷 shuǐ |
| 冬天 |
- | |
|----------------|
| be fond of |
| happy |
| unboiled water |
| time |
| winter |
| room |
| middle |
| welcome |

Quiz 23 (221–230)

- A.

游	多	下	雨
泳	比	较	过
池	热	地	万
夏	常	方	海
- | Word or phrase | Pinyin | English meaning |
|----------------|------------|-----------------|
| (i) 游泳池 | yóuyóngchí | swimming pool |
| (ii) 下雨 | xià yǔ | It's raining. |
| (iii) 比较 | bǐjiào | rather |
| (iv) 地方 | dìfang | place |

B. Pinyin

- (i) Shànghǎi xiàtiān rè bu rè?
 (ii) Bǐjiào rè, bùguò cháng xià yǔ.
 (iii) Shànghǎi yóuyóngchí duō bu duō?
 (iv) Bùshǎo, hěnduō dìfāng dōu yǒu.

Characters

- 上海夏天热不热?
 比较热, 不过常下雨。
 上海游泳池多不多?
 不少, 很多地方都有。

Translation

- Is Shanghai hot in summer?
 (It's) rather hot, but it rains often.
 Are there many swimming pools in Shanghai?
 Quite a few, many places have them.

C.

- (i)
 海边 direction
 海外 seaside
 夏令时 aspect
 热 qíng comparatively
 比较 overseas
 方 xiāng summer time
 方 fā enthusiastic
 方面 method

- (ii)
 常见 rainy season
 常常 common
 下雨 swim
 雨 jì game
 zhèn 雨 tour
 游泳 often
 游 xī rain
 游 lǎn showers

Quiz 24 (231–240)

A.

欢	活	喜	呢
运	动	周	末
步	睡	觉	跑
和	泳	游	爱

Word or phrase

- (i) 活动
 (ii) 运动
 (iii) 周末
 (iv) 睡觉

Pinyin

- huódong
 yundong
 zhōumò
 shuìjiào

English meaning

- activity
 sport
 weekend
 sleep

B. Pinyin

- (i) Zhōumò nǐ yǒu shénme huódong?
 (ii) Zhōumò wǒ ài shuì lǎnjiào.
 (iii) Nǐ xǐhuan shénme yùndong?
 (iv) Wǒ xǐhuan yóuyóng hé pǎobù.

Characters

- 周末你有什么活动?
 周末我爱睡懒觉。
 你喜欢什么运动?
 我喜欢游泳和跑步。

Translation

- What do you do on the weekend?
 During the weekend, I love to sleep in.
 What sports do you like?
 I like swimming and jogging.

C.

- (i)
 周年 zoo
 周日 pleasant to listen to
 生活 touching
 动人 anniversary
 动 tīng spouse
 动 wù 园 hobby
 爱人 living
 爱好 (pron. hào) Sundays

- (ii)
 睡午觉 offend
 睡 lǎn 觉 sports
 睡衣 luck
 觉得 sleep in
 gǎn 觉 afternoon nap
 运动 perception
 运 qì pyjamas
 得 zuì feel

Quiz 25 (241–250)

A.

在	儿	哪	火
共	公	汽	车
知	道	或	站
可	以	者	也

Word or phrase

- (i) 火车站
 (ii) 知道
 (iii) 或者
 (iv) 可以

Pinyin

- huǒchēzhàn
 zhīdao
 huòzhě
 kěyǐ

English meaning

- train station
 be aware of something
 or, perhaps
 can, possible

B. Pinyin

- (i) Dào Zhōngguó Fàndiàn zěnmē zǒu?
 (ii) Kěyǐ zuò gōnggòngqìchē qù.
 (iii) Huòzhě zuò huǒchē yě kěyǐ.
 (iv) Wǒ zhīdao chēzhàn zài nǎr.

Characters

- 到中国饭店怎么走?
 可以坐公共汽车去。
 或者坐火车也可以。
 我知道车站在哪儿。

Translation

- How to get to the China Hotel?
 (You) can take the bus.
 Alternatively, you can take the train.
 I know where the bus stop/train station is.

C. (i)

可爱 — altogether
可能 — know
以前 — reason
公共 — cute
一共 — apologize
知道 — possible
道 li — before
道 qián — public

(ii)

汽车 — gasoline
汽 yǒu — railway station
汽 shuǐ — automobile
或 xǔ — temper
作者 — soft drinks
火 chái — matches
火 qì — perhaps, maybe
火车站 — author, writer

Character Building 5 (201–250)

A. 1. [一] 来 *lái*, come; 万 *wàn*, ten thousand;
面 *miàn*, face.

2. [丨] 北 *běi*, north.

3. [丿] 久 *jiǔ*, a long time;
长 *cháng/zhǎng*, long/grow.

4. [一] 京 *jīng*, capital; 就 *jiù*, then.

5. [十] 南 *nán*, south; 直 *zhí*, straight.

6. [八] 共 *gòng*, together; 典 *diǎn*, standard;
前 *qián*, in front of; 公 *gōng*, public.

7. [人] 从 *cóng*, from; 以 *yǐ*, with.

8. [亻] 住 *zhù*, live, stay; 作 *zuò*, work.

9. [又] 欢 *huān*, happy; 对 *duì*, correct,
opposite.

10. [力] 动 *dòng* move; 助 *zhù*, help.

11. [氵] 游 *yóu*, swim; 泳 *yǒng*, style of
swimming;
池 *chí*, pool, pond; 海 *hǎi*, sea;
活 *huó*, live, living; 汽 *qì*, air.

B. 1. [冫] 冷 *lěng*, cold

2. [冂] 周 *zhōu*, week

3. [刂] 到 *dào*, arrive

4. [士] 喜 *xǐ*, be fond of

5. [己] 已 *yǐ*, already

6. [火] 火 *huǒ*, fire

C. 1. [也] 池 *chí*, pool, pond; 地 *dì*, earth.

2. [匕] 老 *lǎo*, old; 北 *běi*, north.

12. [门] 间 *jiān*, space; 问 *wèn*, ask.

13. [辶] 运 *yùn*, transport; 道 *dào*, road.

14. [土] 坐 *zuò*, sit; 地 *dì*, earth.

15. [口] 呢 *ne*, particle; 和 *hé*, and;
可 *kě*, possible.

16. [巾] 常 *cháng*, often; 帮 *bāng*, help.

17. [冬] 冬 *dōng*, winter; 夏 *xià*, summer.

18. [纟] 经 *jīng*, classic; 练 *liàn*, practice.

19. [灬] 热 *rè*, hot; 点 *diǎn*, dot.

20. [方] 方 *fāng*, direction; 旁 *páng*, next to.

21. [木] 末 *mò*, end; 本 *běn*, base, classifier.

22. [车] 车 *chē*, vehicle; 较 *jiào*, rather, compare.

23. [戈] 或 *huò*, or, perhaps; 我 *wǒ*, I, me.

24. [见] 觉 *jué/jiào*, feel/sleep; 见 *jiàn*, see.

7. [曰] 者 *zhě*, -er, -ist

8. [爪] 爱 *ài*, love

9. [立] 站 *zhàn*, stand; station

10. [目] 睡 *shuì*, sleep

11. [矢] 知 *zhī*, know

12. [雨] 雨 *yǔ*, rain

3. [日] 间 *jiān*, space; 晚 *wǎn*, night.

4. [友] 友 *yǒu*, friend; 爱 *ài*, love.

Review 5 (201–250)

Nouns

地方 *dìfang*, place; 地下 *dìxià*, ground; 地铁 *dìtiě*, subway;
铁路 *tiělù*, railway; 车 *chē*, vehicle; 汽车 *qìchē*, vehicle;
火车 *huǒchē*, train; 火车站 *huǒchēzhàn*, train station;
北方 *běifāng*, north (of a country);
南方 *nánfāng*, south (of a country); 时间 *shíjiān*, time;
冬天 *dōngtiān*, winter; 海边 *hǎibiān*, seaside;
海外 *hǎiwài*, overseas; 夏天 *xiàtiān*, summer;
泳道 *yǒngdào*, lane (in a swimming pool);
游泳池 *yóuyǒngchí*, swimming pool;

方面 *fāngmiàn*, aspect; 周 *zhōu*, week; 周日 *zhōurì*,
Sunday; 周末 *zhōumò*, weekend; 周年 *zhōunián*,
anniversary;

末期 *mòqī*, end of a period; 活动 *huódòng*, activity;

生活 *shēnghuó*, life; 爱好 *àihào*, hobby;

爱人 *àiren*, spouse (used in China only);

午睡 *wǔshuì*, afternoon nap; 运动 *yùndòng*, sport;

汽油 *qìyóu*, gasoline; 作者 *zuòzhě*, author, writer;

读者 *dúzhě*, reader; 站 *zhàn*, station; 道路 *dàolù*, road;

知识 *zhīshi*, knowledge.

Proper nouns

北京 *Běijīng*, Beijing; 南京 *Nánjīng*, Nanjing; 东京 *Dōngjīng*, Tokyo; 上海 *Shànghǎi*, Shanghai.

Verbs

住 *zhù*, live, stay; 到 *dào*, arrive; 到期 *dàoqī*, expire;
坐 *zuò*, sit, ride on (bus, train, ferry, plane); 来 *lái*, come;
经过 *jīngguò*, pass through; 长大 *zhǎngdà*, grow up;
喜爱 *xǐ'ài*, be fond of; 喜欢 *xǐhuan*, be fond of;

Auxiliary verbs

可以 *kěyǐ*, can.

Location words

南边 *nánbian*, southern side; 中间 *zhōngjiān*, middle;
前面 *qiánmian*, ahead; 后面 *hòumian*, behind.

Adverbs

从前 *cóngqián*, formerly; 从来 *cónglái*, all along;
已经 *yǐjīng*, already; 经常 *jīngcháng*, often;
常常 *chángcháng*, often; 比较 *bǐjiào*, comparatively.

Prepositions

从 *cóng*, from; 从...到 *cóng ... dào*, from ... to.

Adjectives

欢喜 *huānxǐ*, happy; 热 *rè*, hot; 常见 *chángjiàn*,
common; 动人 *dòngren*, touching; 可爱 *kě'ài* cute;
到家 *dàojiā*, excellent; 公共 *gōnggòng*, public;
公用 *gōngyòng*, public.

Time words

久 *jiǔ*, long time; 不久 *bùjiǔ*, not a very long time;
以前 *yǐqián*, formerly, before; 以后 *yǐhòu*, afterwards.

Conjunction

和 *hé*, and; 以便 *yǐbiàn*, so as to; 或 *huò*, or;
或者 *huòzhě*, or/maybe.

Particles

呢 *ne*, particle.

Word/Sentence Puzzle 5

ACROSS (left to right)

2. I think my Chinese has improved.
6. The train is running on railway tracks.
7. bus stop.
8. reader (person)
9. (i) There are too many things to do on the weekend.
9. (ii) raining
11. all along
13. This cat is very cute

DOWN

1. first anniversary
2. I often go swimming.
3. (i) sleep
3. (ii) live up to 101
4. train
5. My house is not too far from the station
7. (i) the middle
7. (ii) subway
9. You can come either in the morning or in the afternoon.

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
1			睡								
2		我	觉	得	我	的	中	文	进	步	了
3		常			家		间				
4		去			离				你		
5		游			火		地		早		
6		泳		火	车	在	铁	路	上	走	
7			汽	车	站				或		
8	一				不			读	者		
9	周	末	活	动	太	多	了		下	雨	
10	年		到		远				午		
11			一					从	来		
12			百						都		
13			零		这	只	猫	很	可	爱	
14			一						以		